

连词(Conjunction)又称连接词。它既没有独立、完整的词汇意义,也不能像名词、动词等实词那样可以单独担当任何句子成分。连词主要在词与词,词组与词组,分句与分句间起某种连接的作用,因此,它是一种地地道道的虚词(Empty word 或 Function word)。

人们很早就注意到了连词的特殊功能,在静词(相当于名

## 前 言

词)与动词之后,它成为第三个被划分出来的词类,亚里斯多德称之为不变化词(syndesmoi)。

连词没有词尾变化,作为一种封闭类词(Closed-class word),其数量也基本保持稳定。

之所以说“基本保持稳定”是因为,一、人们对于起连接作用的某些副词,如 moreover,究竟应归入连词,还是仍留在副词内存在着仁者见仁、智者见智的情况;二、有些词的用法还在演变的过程中,如 like,其连词地位便有待认可。但对于将连词作为一个整体归入封闭类词,语法家们似乎并无异议。

尽管形态简单,数量有限,但要掌握各种连词的不同用法却

不是一件容易的事。连词难,难在如下五个方面:

一、因为没有独立完整的词汇意义,有些连词的用法就会令那些习惯于在英汉词汇间画等号的学习者感觉难以把握。如果认定“and = 和”,你就无法理解下边这样的句子:One more step and you will be a dead man. (再上前一步,你就死定了。);如果死抱着“or = 或者”,你就很难接受 or = and not 的事实:What decides is not explosives or wells or atom bombs, but the man who handles them. (起决定作用的不是炸弹,不是油井,也不是原子弹,而是掌控它们的人。)

2

二、表示同一逻辑关系有多种连词可供选择,如表示因果关系就有 for, because, as, since, now that, seeing that, in that, not that... but that 等,但在一定的上下文中,却只有一个连词是最恰当的,甚至是唯一正确的。这便要求学习者对表示同一逻辑关系的各连词之间的差异有一个比较明确的认识。

三、有些连词可引导一种以上的从句,如 that,由它引导的从句可以是主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句、原因状语从句、目的状语从句或结果状语从句,作为关系代词,它还可以引导定语从句;有些情况下这个 that 可以省略,而有的情况下,这个 that 又不能省略。同一连词身兼多职的情况无疑会增加学习者的记忆负担。

四、连词不仅可以简单句变成并列句、复合句或并列复合

句,还可以成为句与句间的逻辑纽带,即连句成篇的重要手段。由于连词的使用,时间关系、空间关系、因果关系等逻辑关系更为突出,语篇的粘合性(Cohesion)与连贯性(Coherence)均得以增强。中国学生写作中的一些毛病,如通篇尽是简单句,文章逻辑混乱,语句欠连贯等似乎都与不善于使用连接词有关。

五、虽然英、汉两种语言同属分析性语言(Analytic language),但英语重形合,一般情况下,要表示某种逻辑关系非使用相应的连接词不可;而汉语重意合,不用或少用连词也可达到行文流畅的目的。受到母语干扰的英语学习者往往会在该用连词的地方漏掉了连词。像“他乐于助人,同学们都很喜欢他”这样的句子,前半部分是“因”,后半部分是“果”,译成英语时就得增添表示因果关系的连词,如 as, so 等。反之,将英语译成汉语时,为了行文的简洁,删除某些连词也是必要的。可是,我们的英语学习者在这样的时代又可能缩手缩脚。

本书正是针对中国英语学习者的上述困难与问题撰写的。在内容与编写体例上都充分考虑到了学习者的各种需要。为了便于辨别比较,编者特将表示同一逻辑关系而又易于混淆的连词并为一组,除给予每个连词足够的例证外,还对它们之间的异同以及某些连词的文体特征作了适当的点评。为了方便学习者查阅,绝大多数连词均醒目地出现在各个章节的标题中。除此之外,本书的索引部分还对全书出现的连词或与连词相关的短语进行了全面地归纳,仍以 that 为例,索引中的“1, 3, 5,

28 ,32 ,50 ,65 ,66 ,67 ,68 ”提示读者 他可以在第一、第三 ,直至最后一节 ,第 68 节中 ,找到 that 的各种用法。

在本书的编写过程中 ,笔者参阅了大量文字资料 ,包括各种网络资讯 ,从中获益良多 ,但囿于篇幅 ,无法一一指明出处 ,在此谨向这些资料的提供者表示感谢与歉意。

李瑾女士为本书的策划与编写作了大量的工作 ,没有她的帮助与鼓励 ,要完成这本小书显然是不可能的。

最后 ,笔者想借此机会向 Dr. Alice K. Barter 和她的先生 Dr. James Baird 表示崇高的敬意。感谢他俩多年来对笔者的帮助与教诲。

## 连词总论

- 1 连词的功能与分类 / 1
- 2 介词、副词与连词 / 4
- 3 连词与英语句型的转换 / 11
- 4 时态、语气与连词 / 18
- 5 同一连词,不同角色 / 23

## 以 And 为代表的并列连词

- 6 And 与“和”不能处处画等号 / 28
- 7 Go to see ,Go and see 与 Go see / 29
- 8 A ,B ( ,)and C ;A and B ( ,) and C 与 A ,B ,C / 32
- 9 Night and Day 与 Day and Night / 36
- 10 Nice and Warm 与 Good and Cold / 40
- 11 句首的 And / 44
- 12 口语中的 And 与 And so / 47
- 13 And 后的省略及 And that 结构 / 52
- 14 Both... and ,As well as 与 Not only... but (also) / 54

## 以 But 为代表的并列连词

- 15 But 与 Not...but / 59
- 16 Yet ,And yet 与 But yet / 64
- 17 Nevertheless ,However ,Only 与 Still / 65
- 18 While ,When ,Whereas 与 Where / 67

## 以 Or 为代表的并列连词

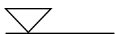
- 19 Or 并非永远意味着选择 / 72
- 20 Or 与 and 的互补及对立 / 75
- 21 Or so ,Or no 与 Or something / 81
- 22 Either...or ,Neither...nor 与 Nor / 83

## 以 So 为代表的并列连词

- 23 So ,Hence 与 Thus / 86
- 24 Accordingly ,Consequently 与 Therefore / 88

## 从属连词与原因状语从句

- 25 For 与 Because / 90
- 26 Since 与 As / 96
- 27 Seeing that ,Seeing as 与 Considering that / 98
- 28 Now that 与 Not that...but that / 99



29 In that ,Only that ,Inasmuch as 与 Insomuch as / 102

## 从属连词与结果状语从句

30 So... that ,So that 与 Such... that ,Such that / 104

31 To such a degree that 与 To such an extent that / 110

## 从属连词与目的状语从句

32 That ,So that 与 In order that / 114

33 Lest ,In case (that) 与 For fear (that) / 117

## 从属连词与时间状语从句

34 When ,Whenever ,While 与 As / 120

35 Before 与 After ,Since 与 Ever Since / 123

36 Till 与 Until / 126

37 Instantly ,Directly 与 Immediately / 129

38 The moment ,The instant 与 The minute / 130

39 Once 与 As soon as / 131

40 No sooner... than ,Scarcely... before 与 Hardly...  
when / 133

41 Every time ,Each time ,First time 与 Last time / 135

42 时间状语从句中的省略 / 137



## 从属连词与条件状语从句

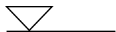
- 43 If ,When 与 If and when / 141
- 44 If only ,Only if 与 If and only if (Iff) / 147
- 45 If any ,If anything 与 If you please / 149
- 46 As long as ,So long as ,On condition that 与 In case / 152
- 47 Suppose ,Supposing ,Assume ,Assuming 与 Provided ,  
Providing / 155
- 48 Granting (that) ,Granted (that) 与 Given that / 157
- 49 If not ,If... not 与 Unless / 159

## 从属连词与让步状语从句

- 50 Though 与 Although / 164
- 51 Even if 与 Even though / 169
- 52 No matter (what) 与 Whatever / 171
- 53 When ,While ,Whether 与 If / 177
- 54 Granted (that) ,Granting (that) 与 For all (that) / 182
- 55 让步状语从句中的省略 / 184

## 从属连词与地点状语从句

- 56 Where ,Wherever ,Everywhere 与 No matter where / 188





## 从属连词与方式状语从句

- 57 As 与 As...so / 192  
58 Like ,The way ,However 与 How / 195  
59 As if 与 As though / 197  
60 方式状语从句中的省略 / 201

## 从属连词与比较状语从句

- 61 More lucky than clever 与 No more fish than a horse / 203  
62 As...as 与 Not so...as / 211  
63 The more...the more 与 The more...the less / 219  
64 Except (that) ,Excepting that ,With the exception that 与  
But (that) / 222

## 连词与名词性从句

- 65 That ,Whether ,If 与主语从句 / 224  
66 That ,Whether ,If 与宾语从句 / 228  
67 That ,Whether 与同位语从句 / 237  
68 That ,Whether 与表语从句 / 241

Exercises / 243

Index / 271

Bibliography / 277

所谓“小词”指的是冠词、介词、连词等虚词(Empty word),以及代词、数词等非主流的实词(Content word)。

除数词介于开放类与封闭类之间外,其他“小词”均属数量不大可能增加的封闭类词。在号称有近百万词汇,并仍在不断扩张的英语中,为数不多的“小词”显得有些微不足道。“小词”之“小”还表现在词的长度上,它们中的绝大多数仅一两个音节

## 总 序

而已。属于虚词的那部分“小词”甚至没有独立担当句子成分  
的资格。口语中,不少“小词”都得弱读,语流越快,弱化的现象  
越严重,没有经过训练的耳朵甚至无法感知它们的存在。

如果我们因此便小视它们的话,那就大错特错了。“小词”  
虽然貌不惊人,能量却不小。其重要性首先表现在词频上。据  
Brown 语料库统计,英语中使用频率最高的 10 个单词依次是:  
the, be, of, and, a, in, he, to(不定式符号), have, to(介  
词)。其中 8 个属于我们所说的“小词”。柯林斯 Cobuild 语料  
库的数据表明,在使用频率最高的 150 个英语单词中,属于“小

词”的各种虚词就占了 144 个。其次,是它们组词成句,组句成篇的强大功能。“小词”中的各类虚词又称“功能词”(Function word),因其可以表现形形色色的语法关系和逻辑关系而得名。没有它们,不但无法造就各种复杂的并列句,复合句,就连十分简单的简单句,恐怕也很困难。评价一篇文章的难度,不只看里边有多少生僻字,更要看“小词”所占的比例,“小词”所占比例越高,文章的难度也越大。第三,许多“小词”没有确切的词义,如 wait on 与 wait for 中的 on 与 for,这往往令初学者头痛不已,而这,正是“小词”们得以在英语舞台上以一当十,大显身手的奥秘。

2

英语之难,难在“小词”。“小词”的掌握程度是衡量一个人英语水平高低的重要标尺。能否攻克它们直接关系到英语学习的成败。每一个有志于学好英语的人,都必须知难而进,在“小词”上下大功夫。

# 连词总论

## 1 连词的功能与分类

连词有两大类:并列连词(Coordinating conjunction)和从属连词(Subordinating conjunction)。并列连词包括 and、but、or 等,可用以连接两个或两个以上互不依从的词、短语或分句。从属连词引导从句,包括:when、if、in order that 等。英语的从句有三种类型:名词性从句;形容词性从句,即定语从句;副词性从句,即状语从句。从属连词主要引导状语从句与名词性从句。

1 并列连词有如下四个系列,分别以 and、but、or、so 为代表:

1)表示语义引申的 and 系列:and、both... and、as well as、not only... but also;

2)表示转折与对比的 but 系列:but、yet、nevertheless、however、still;

3)表示选择的 or 系列:or、either... or、neither... nor、or else、otherwise;

4)表示因果关系的 so 系列:so、therefore、accordingly、thus、hence、consequently、for。

2 引导状语从句的从属连词可根据所引导的从句的性质,分成九类:

1)引导原因状语从句的连词:as、because、since、seeing that、considering that、now that、not that... but that;

- 2) 引导结果状语从句的连词 :so . . . that ,such . . . that ,so that ,such that ;
- 3) 引导目的状语从句的连词 that ,so that ,in order that ,lest ,for fear(that) ,in case ( that ) ;
- 4) 引导时间状语从句的连词 :when ,whenever ,as ,while ,before ,after ,until ,till ,since ,ever since ,once ,as soon as ,every time ,the moment ,instantly ,directly ,now ,now that ,immediately ,no sooner . . . than ,hardly . . . when ( before ) ;
- 5) 引导条件状语从句的连词 :if ,unless ,supposing ,suppose ,provided ( that ) ,providing ,giving that ,granted ( that ) ,granting ( that ) ,as long as ,so long as ,on condition ( that ) ,in case ;
- 6) 引导让步状语从句的连词 :though ,although ,no matter ,even if ,even though ,however ,whatever ,while ,whether ,granted ( that ) ,granting ( that ) ,in spite of the fact ( that ) ,for all ( that ) ,regardless of the fact that ;
- 7) 引导地点状语从句的连词 :where ,wherever ,everywhere ,no matter where ;
- 8) 引导方式状语从句的连词 :as ,as if ,like ,as though ,however ,the way ;
- 9) 引导比较状语从句的连词 than ,as.
- 3** 名词性从句包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句与同位语从句。引导名词性从句的连词也可依此划为四类 :

- 1) 引导主语从句的连词 that ,whether ,if ;
- 2) 引导宾语从句的连词 that ,whether ,if ;
- 3) 引导表语从句的连词 that ,whether ;
- 4) 引导同位语从句的连词 that ,whether.

因为引导主语从句的连词与引导宾语从句的连词完全相同,而引导表语从句与引导同位语从句的连词也相同,所以可以将以上四类合并为两类。

此外,根据形态,连词还可分为简单连词(Simple conjunctions),如 and ,when ,if 等;短语连词(Phrasal conjunctions),如 in order that ,as if ,as well as 等,以及关联连词(Correlative conjunctions),如 not only... but also , both... and ,neither... nor 等。

根据组成成分的异同,我们还可以将短语连词细分为如下四类:

- 1) 以 that 结尾的,如 in that ,so that ,in order that ,except that ,such that ,for all that ;
- 2) that 可有可无的,如 now ( that ) ,providing ( that ) ,provided ( that ) ,supposing ( that ) ,considering ( that ) ,given ( that ) ,granting ( that ) ,granted ( that ) ,admitting ( that ) ,assuming ( that ) ,seeing ( that ) ,immediately ( that ) ,directly ( that ) ;
- 3) 以 as 结尾的,如 as far as ,as long as ,as soon as ,so long as ,insofar as ,so far as ,in as much as ,according as ;
- 4) 以 than 结尾的,如 sooner than ,rather than 等。

## 2 介词、副词与连词

1 连词与介词、副词的关系最为密切,有的连词同时具有介词或副词的双重或三重身份,如 since after before for as but , notwithstanding.

1) He has been with us since he arrived in Wuhan.

他到了武汉后一直和我们在一起。

(Since 为连词,在此引导时间状语从句。)

2) He has been with us since his arrival.

他到了以后一直与我们在一起。

(Since 为介词, since his arrival 为介词短语,整个短语在句中充当时间状语。)

3) She left Wuhan in 1978 and I have not seen her since.

她 1978 年离开武汉,自那以后我再也没见过她。

(Since 为副词,相当于 since then,它在句中作时间状语。)

4) We shall discuss it after the lecture is over.

讲座结束后我们将讨论这个问题。

(After 作为连词,在此引导时间状语从句。)

5) We shall discuss it after the lecture.

讲座(结束)后我们将讨论这个问题。

(After 为介词,介词短语 after the lecture 在句中充当时间状语。)

6) He arrived a week after.

他一个星期后到了。

(After 为副词, a week after 在句中充当时间状语。)

7) Don't go away before I come back.

在我回来之前别走。

(Before 为连词, 引导时间状语从句。)

8) He spoke before a vast audience.

他在大庭广众中讲了话。

(Before a vast audience 为介词短语, 在句中充当地点状语。)

9) I have never been there before.

我从前没去过那里。

(Before 为副词, 在句中充当时间状语。)

10) It must have rained last night, for the ground is still wet.

昨晚一定下过雨的, 因为地上仍是湿的。

(For 表示因果关系, 属并列连词。)

11) He stood in the rain for two good hours, waiting for his wife.

他在雨中站了整整两个小时, 等候他的妻子。

(句中的两个 for 都是介词。For two good hours 为时间状语, 而后一个 for 则是短语动词 wait for 的一部分。)

12) I'm sorry, but I won't be able to come tonight.

对不起, 我今天晚上不能来了。

(But 属并列连词, 在此表示转折关系。)

13) Nobody knew it but me.

除了我没人知道。



(But 为介词 ,me 为介词宾语。)

14) He left but an hour ago.

他一个小时前刚刚离开。

(But 作为副词在此修饰 an hour ago. 除此之外 ,but 还可以充当动词、代词、名词等。)

15) Go straight on until you come to a bridge.

一直往前 ,直到你走到一座桥为止。

(Until 在此用作连词 ,引导时间状语从句。)

16) His absence remained unnoticed until morning.

直到早上才发现他不在了。

(Until 在此用作介词 ,morning 为介词宾语。)

17) I'd quite like to go out , (al)though it is a bit late.

尽管有点晚了 ,我仍很想出去。

[(Al)though 是引导让步状语从句的连词。]

18) It was a quiet party , I had a good time , though.

聚会并不热闹 ,但我却很开心。

(位于句尾的 though 为副词 ,其义与 however 相当。Although 没有类似用法。)

2 从一种词类到另一种词类往往有一个逐步演变的过程 ,如现在经常用作连词的 as ,在 12 世纪以前 ,它仅用作副词 ,与 also 同源 ,意为 all so。从 12 世纪起 ,as 开始兼有连词的功能 ,到了 13 世纪 ,才出现了 as 作介词接名词或代词的用法。Than 是另一个很好的例子。在 12 世纪以前它仅用作连词 ,后来因为它所引导的比较从句常被省略得只剩一个名词

或代词,遂被误认为介词而有了接宾格代词的用法。到了16世纪,接宾格的用法已相当普遍,尽管有些保守的语法学家试图扭转这种趋势,但终究无法改变 than 业已为多数人认同的介词地位。Like 主要用作动词、形容词或介词,但将它用作连词的情况现在也多了起来,而且这种用法已被多种权威的词典所收录。尽管如今在英语测试或正规的场合中,这种用法还得避免,相信它被堂而皇之地纳入正规的英语也只是一个时间问题。

19) You must study as hard as your father did when he was young.

你必须像你父亲年轻时那样刻苦学习。

(As 为连词,引导比较状语从句。)

20) Mr. Snow came to China as a journalist.

斯诺先生以记者的身份来到中国。

(As 为介词。)

21) He did the work in two hours, but it took me as many hours.

这项工作他两小时就干完了,但我却花了两天。

(As 为副词。)

22) It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the Kingdom of God. (the Bible)

富人进天堂比骆驼过针眼还要难。

(Than 为连词,在此引导比较状语从句。)

23) She draws better than I (do).

她比我画得好。

24) She draws better than me.

她比我画得好。

(虽然和例 23 意思完全相同,但 than 后的 me 表明,than 已由连词变成了介词。实际上,在这种情况下,现在用 I 和 me 都对,但用 me 更普遍。)

25) It looks like rain(ing).

看上去要下雨了。

(Look like 中的 like 被视为形容词,后边的 rain 或 raining 为表语。)

26) Don't treat the migrant workers like that.

别这样对待民工。

(Like 为介词,整个介词短语在句中作方式状语。)

27) Like enough it will rain.

天像要下雨了。

(Like 在此句中用作副词。)

28) Have good posture, but avoid appearing like you're as stiff as a cardboard cutout.

姿势要好,但要避免过于僵硬,使人觉得你像是从硬纸板上剪下来的。

(Like 在句中充当连词,引导方式状语从句。)

**3** 有的副词具有将两个或两个以上的句子连接在一起的功能。这样的副词叫连接副词(Conjunctive adverb)。连接副词不一定总放在它所引导的分句的开头,这是它与一般连接词不同的地方。许多连接副词已被纳入并列连词的范畴,由它

们连接的两个或两个以上的分句在语法上是平等的。

29) The chairman left ; the meeting , however , continued.

主席走了 ,但会还在开。

(However 经常出现在主语与谓语之间 ,前后以逗号分隔。)

30) Our leading man fell ill ; we therefore had to cancel the play.

我们的主角病了 ,因此我们只好取消了演出。

(在 we 的前边也可以加一个 and ,但有了连词 and 后 , therefore 就失去了连接功能而回到了纯粹副词的地位。)

31) The rain was heavy , consequently the land was flooded.

雨下得很大 ,结果这块地方就淹了。

32) It s not surprising , it s nevertheless disappointing.

虽然是意料之中的事 ,但还是令人失望。

33) I didn t mind , indeed I was pleased.

我不介意 ,其实 ,我很高兴。

34) The house isn t big enough for us , furthermore , it is too far from the town.

这房子对我们来说还不够大 ,而且距城里太远。

4 有的连接副词已转变为从属连词。作为从属连词 ,它们必须出现在从句的开头 ,这是它们和一般连接副词不同的地方。

以下四个连词的语义基本相同 ,都可以用 as soon as 替代。

35) He telephoned her instantly he came home.

他一到家立即就给她去了电话。

36) I came directly I got your message.

一接到你的信我就来了。

- 37) We held a meeting to sum up our experience immediately we finished the work.

工作刚完成我们就开会总结了经验。

- 38) Once they realize the importance of education, the villagers will be happy to send their children to your school.

一旦村民们认识到了教育的重要性后,他们会乐意将自己的孩子送到你们学校的。

- 5 有些副词可以修饰由从属连词引出的状语从句。被修饰的从句多为时间状语从句和原因状语从句。也有的语法学家认为,这些副词修饰的不是从句而是从属连词。

- 39) The employees left the company immediately after their boss went home.

老板刚回家,雇员们就离开了这栋大楼。

(副词 immediately 修饰 after 从句。)

- 40) Right before the Japanese entered the village, the wounded American pilot had been safely transferred to a small island nearby.

就在日本人进村之前,这位受伤的美国飞行员已被安全地转移到了附近的一个小岛上。

(副词 right 修饰由 before 引出的时间状语从句。)

- 41) Only when the injured limb is fully mobile will the runner be allowed to go back to the sports ground.

只有在受伤的肢体可以完全活动之后,这位赛跑运动员才

能获准重回运动场。

(由于 only 出现在句首,主句部分形成了部分倒装,助动词 will 被移到了主语之前。)

6 有的副词可以与从属连词结合以形成新的从属连词。

42) Even if you disagree with her, she's worth listening to.

即使你不同意她的意见,她的话还是值得一听的。

43) She is afraid to speak in the public even though she is a Nobel prize winner for literature.

尽管她是一位诺贝尔文学奖得主,但她却害怕在大庭广众中讲话。

44) If only my cousin could recover from her illness!

要是我的表妹能够恢复健康多好啊!

45) The migrant workers will go back to the worksite only if the contractor apologizes to them.

只有在承包商向他们道歉的情况下民工们才会重回工地。

46) He is a good student, only that he is a little idle.

他倒是一个好学生,只是稍微有点懒。

### 3 连词与英语句型的转换

1 英语的句子依结构可分为简单句(the Simple Sentence)、并列句(the Compound Sentence)、复合句(the Complex Sentence)与并列复合句(the Compound Complex Sentence)等四类。简单句只有一套主谓结构,并列句是在简单句的基础上凭借并列连词或起连词作用的副词或标点符号构

成的,它有一套以上的主谓结构,各分句间没有主次之分。复合句也是在简单句的基础上构成的,但需借助于各种从属连词、关系代词或关系副词。由从属连词引导的分句依附于主句,并在主句中担当某种成分,如主语、时间状语、地点状语、宾语、表语等。由两个或两个以上的复合句通过并列连词或标点符号连接起来后就构成了更为复杂的并列复合句。

1) She is very pretty.

她很漂亮。

(该句为简单句,因为只有一套主谓结构。)

2) She is very pretty, while her sister is extremely ugly.

她很漂亮,而她的妹妹却奇丑无比。

(两个简单句由 while 连接而成为并列句。全句有两套主谓结构。)

3) She is very pretty, but her sister is extremely ugly.

她很漂亮,但她的妹妹却奇丑无比。

(两套主谓结构由并列连词 but 连接而成为并列句。)

4) Though she is very pretty, her sister is extremely ugly.

虽然她很漂亮,但她的妹妹却奇丑无比。

(该句与前一句子可以相互转换,但从语法的角度看,though 为从属连词,由它引导的分句为让步状语从句,整个句子应为复合句。)

5) When the captains know the exact time, they can look at the stars and figure out exactly where their ships are.

当船长们知道了确切的时间时,他们可以观察这些星星,并测算出船只的准确位置。

(该复合句包含两个从句,一个是由 when 引导的时间状语从句,另一个是以 where 引导的宾语从句。)

6) Motorcycles are lighter and have smaller engines, so I guess they get better gas mileage.

机器脚踏车较轻,引擎小一点,因此,我猜想它们的耗油量要低一些。

(该句为并列复合句。以 so 为界,前后为两个并列的分句。后一分句本身又是一个主从复合句,动词 guess 后引导宾语从句的 that 被省略。)

7) Nobody took much notice of them at first, but people began to talk and ask questions as soon as their research station was built.

起初,人们并不怎么注意他们,一旦研究站建成后,人们便开始议论并提出问题了。

(该句为并列复合句,两并列分句由并列连词 but 连接,后一分句内含时间状语从句,由 as soon as 引导。)

2 有些复合句与简单句或并列句可以相互转换而不改变原句的意思。

8) When he saw me, he ran away.

当他看到我时,就跑了。

(这是一个含有时间状语从句的主从复合句。)

Cf He saw me and then ran away.

(简单句,只有一个主语和一对并列的谓语。)



He saw me and then he ran away.

(在第二个动词前加了一个主语 he 就使简单句变成了并列句。)

9) Whether I help you or not , you are sure to lose the game.

不管我帮助你也好 ,不帮助你也好 ,你肯定会输掉这场比赛的。

Cf I may help you. I may not help you. You re sure to lose the game.

(一个复合句变成了三个简单句。)

Even if I help you , you are sure to lose the game.

即使我帮助你 ,你肯定还是会输掉这场比赛的。

(换用另一连词后 ,意思并没有多大改变。)

10) I will get ready. Do not go till then.

我将作好准备。请在那之前别走。

Cf Do not go till I get ready.

(意思同上 ,两简单句已借助连词 till 变成了主从复合句。

例 10 中的 till 为介词。)

11) It is certain that he will be late.

他肯定会迟到。

Cf He is certain to be late.

(意思同上 ,但原来的复合句已变成简单句。)

12) He does not always speak as he thinks.

他不总是怎么想就怎么说。

Cf He does not always speak his thoughts.

(意思同上,但去掉了 as 引导的方式状语从句后,复合句便变成了简单句。)

- 3 有些介词短语与从句的作用相当,用这样的介词短语取代从句后,句子便由主从复合句变成了简单句。

- 13) Because he was careless, he failed to pass the examination again.

因为粗心,他考试又没及格。

(该句为含有原因状语的复合句。)

Cf :Because of his carelessness, he failed to pass the examination again.

(改用介词后,原因状语从句消失,句子由复合句变成了简单句。)

- 14) When he left the school he joined the army.

离开学校后他参加了军。

Cf :On leaving the school he joined the army.

(意思同上,但复合句变成了简单句。)

- 15) I am sure that he is innocent.

我确信他是无辜的。

Cf :I am sure of his innocence.

(意思同上,但从句已被介词短语取代,复合句由此变成了简单句。)

- 16) When the cat is away, the mice will play. ( A proverb )

猫儿不在,老鼠玩得自在。

Cf :In the absence of the cat the mice will play.

(意思同上。介词短语取代时间状语从句后,全句变为简单句。)

17) Our trust is that he will succeed.

我们确信他会成功。

(本句含有一个表语从句。)

Cf :We have trust in his success.

(意思同上。但本句为简单句。)

18) She complained to me that her husband had been rude to her.

她向我抱怨说丈夫对她很粗暴。

Cf She complained to me of her husband's rudeness.

(宾语从句由 of 短语取代后,复合句变成了简单句。)

19) You can talk as much as you like.

你想讲就讲。

Cf :You can talk to your heart's content.

4 有些主从复合句可通过动词不定式变成简单句。

20) We believed that the president was killed in the accident.

我们相信总统在事故中死了。

Cf :We believed the president to be killed in the accident.

(意思与原句相同,但原来的宾语从句消失了,复合句变成了只有一套主谓结构的简单句。该句也可改用被动语态,但意思有所改变 :The president was believed to be killed in the accident. )

21) They declared that he was a liar.

他们宣布他是一个骗子。

Cf :They declared him to be a liar.

22) We know ( that ) he is an honest man.

我们知道他是一个老实人。

Cf :We know him to be an honest man.

23) It seems that you have made a mistake.

你看来犯了一个错误。

Cf :You seem to have made a mistake.

**5** 有的从句可被分词短语或不定式取代,从而实现由复合句向简单句的转化。

24) When he entered the classroom ,he found all his classmates stood against the wall.

当他走进教室时,他发现他的同学都靠墙站着。

Cf : Entering the classroom , he found all his classmates standing against the wall.

(意思同上,但换用分词后,该句变成了简单句。)

25) In order that he could have enough money to pay his tuition for the next semester ,he worked as a tutor the whole summer vacation.

为了有足够的钱交下学期的学费,他整个暑假都在当家教。

Cf In order to have enough money to pay his tuition for the next semester ,he worked as a tutor the whole summer vacation.

(换用不定式短语后,意思不变,但含有目的状语从句的复合句已变成简单句。)

#### 4 时态、语气与连词

1 在 after, before, till, until, as soon as, when, if, as long as 等连词引导的时间状语从句或条件状语从句中,将来时间要以现在时表示。

1) I'll phone you after I arrive.

我到了就打电话给你。

(After 后的 arrive 虽为一般现在时,代表的却是将来时间。)

2) I'll phone you after I have arrived.

[意思与前一句相同,但从句中用了现在完成时(又称现在完成体),其功能相当于将来完成时,强调打电话要在“到达之后”。例 1 中的动作先后是通过 after 的词汇意义表达的。]

3) I'll be back before you have left.

在你离开前我会回来的。

(从句中的现在完成时实际上表现的是将要完成的动作。此句也可以改用一般现在时,意思不变: I'll be back before you leave. )

4) I'll tell you as soon as I know.

我知道后马上告诉你。

5) I'll stay with you as long as there is a room free.

只要有一个房间空着,我就和你呆在一起。

(此处不能用 as long as there will be a room free, 尽管该

句讲的是将来的情况。)

6) If you do that again , you ll be fined.

如果你再那么做 ,就会被罚款。

7) Supposing it snows—what shall we do ?

假如下雨的话 ,我们干什么呢 ?

(条件状语从句中 ,以一般现在时表示真实条件 ,即可能成为现实的情况。)

8) I ve got my tennis things in case we have time for a game.

我把打网球的東西都帶上了 ,有空就可以打一場。

(在 in case 引导的条件状语从句中以一般现在时表示将来时间 ,哪怕主句用了一般现在时也是如此。此处的 have got 属英国英语的用法 ,相当于 have. )

2 在 as 或 than 引导的比较状语从句中 ,既可用现在时也可以用将来时表示将要发生的事情或将要出现的情况 ,如全句为虚拟语气 ,则以过去式表示建立在假设基础上的结果。

9) She ll probably be on the same plane as I am tomorrow.

她可能明天会和我在同一架飞机上。

[从句中也可以用将来时间 as I will (be) tomorrow. 但主句用了将来时 ,从句再用将来时似乎不够简洁。]

10) We ll probably drive faster than you do , so we ll get there first and buy the tickets.

我们车可能开得比你快 ,因此会先到那里把票买了。

(从句中的现在时也可换用将来时 :than you will do. )

11) If we both got the same job , you would earn more than

I did because of your degree.

如果我俩获得同一份工作,你的工资会因为你的学位而比我的高。

(全句采用虚拟语气。Than I did 中的 did 意为 earned, 此处显然不是指的过去的情况,而是在假设基础上可能出现的结果。)

- 3 在 whatever 或 no matter what 等引导的让步状语从句中,将来时间也常用现在时表示。

12) Wherever you go I'll follow you.

不管你去哪儿我都要跟着你。

(从句中的一般现在时指将来时间。此处的让步状语从句实际上也暗含条件。)

13) Whatever you do, I'll always stand by your side.

不管你做什么,我都会支持你。

14) No matter who telephones, say I'm out.

不管谁来电话,就说我不在家。

15) No matter when you come, you'll be more than welcome.

不管你何时来,你都会受到极其热烈的欢迎。

16) I'll have a good time whether I win or lose.

不管是赢是输,我都将很快乐。

- 4 在 so that 与 in order that 引导的目的状语从句中,既可用将来时,也可用一般现在时表示将来时间。

17) We ought to write to him, in order that he doesn't feel we're hiding things from him.

我们应该给他写信,以免他认为我们有事瞒着他。

(从句中的 doesn't feel 可换成 won't feel.)

- 18) You should talk to that shy girl so that she doesn't feel left out.

你该和那个害羞的姑娘讲讲话,不让她有被冷落的感觉。

(从句可换用一般将来时 so that she won't feel left out.)

- 5 在 I bet, I hope 所接的宾语从句中,一般现在时往往表示将来时间。

- 19) I bet I get there before you.

我敢打赌,我能在你之前到达那里。

(从句中的 get 表示将来时间。)

- 20) I bet they are married before the end of the year.

我敢打赌他们年底前会结婚。

(They are married 显然指的是年底前将要发生的事。)

- 21) I hope you sleep well.

愿你睡个好觉。

- 22) I hope he comes soon.

我希望他快点来。

- 6 谈及过去的事情时,有些情况尽管现在依然如此,还是要用过去时,这在语法上称为时态的连续(Tense sequence)。在间接引语中这种情况尤为普遍。

- 23) She got the job because she was a good driver.

她能获得此项工作是因为车开得好。

(说这句话时,“获得此项工作”当然是过去的事了,got 理所当然地要用过去时, because 从句中用过去时,则是“时态连



续”的要求 尽管说话时 she is still a good driver. )

- 24) He married her because he wanted a wife who could cook.

他娶她是因为他想要一个能做饭的老婆。

(Because 从句说明了他娶她的原因 ,尽管他现在的想法仍然如此 ,为了时态的连续还是要用过去时。)

- 25) I wanted to join the police , but I wasn't tall enough.

我当时想当警察 ,但身高不够。

(当时想当警察因为身高未达标准被拒 ,尽管说话时可能身高仍不够 ,但为着时态的连续 ,仍要用过去式。)

- 26) “How old are you ?”

“ I beg your pardon ?”

“ I asked you how old you were. ”

“ 你年龄有多大 ?”

“ 您说什么 ?”

“ 我问你年龄有多大。 ”

(间接引语中用 you were ,而不用 you are 是引述动词 asked 的要求。)

- 7 在表示虚拟条件的 if 从句及由 as if 或 as though 引导的方式状语从句中常常要用到虚拟语气。

- 27) He looks as if he had seen a ghost.

他看上去就像见到了鬼似的。

(迷信的人可能会用 as if he has seen a ghost ,对于不信鬼的人 ,只能用虚拟语气。)

- 28) Why is she looking at me as though she knew me ?

I've never seen her before in my life.

她干嘛以那种似乎认识我的神情看着我？我这辈子可不曾见过她。

(说话者认定不曾见过那个女人,因此,从句中只能用虚拟语气 knew.)

29) She looks as if she were drunk.

她看上去似乎已经醉了。

(说话者认为她只是看上去醉了,故用虚拟语气,如认为她醉的可能性较大,则用现在时 She looks as if she is drunk.)

30) I'd go there if I were you.

我要是你的话,就会去那儿。

(I'd 是 I would 的缩略形式。)

31) I would have told you if I'd realized you didn't know.

如果我知道你还不知道的话,我早就告诉你了。

(此处表示的是与过去情况完全相反的假设。I'd 是 I had 的缩略形式。)

32) I propose to her that she should come with me.

我提议她和我一道来。

(在 propose, suggest, demand 等动词后,从句用虚拟式现在时,即动词原型或 should 加动词原型。)

## 5 同一连词,不同角色

英语中有不少连词可以表示不同的逻辑关系,因而可以引出不同的从句。

1) That 的出现频率在英语中排行第七,作为关系代词,它可以引导定语从句,作为连词,它可以引导主语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句、表语从句等各种名词性从句,还可以引导原因状语从句、结果状语从句、目的状语从句等。

1) I can't find the book (that) you lent me last week.

我找不到你上周给我的那本书了。(定语从句)

2) That he is a swindler is not known by everyone in his class.

他是个骗子这一点不是班上人人都知道的。(主语从句)

3) I can hardly believe (that) he is a swindler.

我很难相信他会是一个骗子。(宾语从句)

4) The news that the Japanese had surrendered soon spread over the whole mountainous area.

日本人投降的消息很快在整个山区传开了。(同位语从句)

5) The trouble is that he has forgotten the secret code.

麻烦是他忘了密码。(表语从句)

6) It is rather that she was ill then.

主要是由于她当时生病了。(表语从句)

7) Please speak louder (so) that everyone may hear what you say.

声音大一点,以便每个人都能听清你说的话。(目的状语从句)

8) The lecture was such that all those present were deeply moved.

讲座如此成功每一个在场的人都被深深地打动了。(结果状语从句)

语从句)

2) As 既可作为关系代词引导定语从句,也可作为连词引导原因、时间、方式、比较等状语从句。

9) He is an Englishman, as I know from his accent.

他是英国人,我是根据他的口音判断出来的。

(As 作为关系代词引导定语从句,其先行词为整个主句部分。)

10) This is the same mobile phone as he lost yesterday.

这正是他昨天丢失的那一部手机。

(As 作为关系代词引导定语从句。)

11) The clock was striking twelve as I walked down the street.

当我向街那边走去时,时钟正敲十二点。

(As 作为连词引导时间状语从句。)

12) As you object, I'll reconsider the plan.

因为你反对,我将重新考虑这个计划。

(As 作为连词引导原因状语从句。)

13) Old as he is, he insists on working ten hours a day.

尽管年龄很大,他仍坚持每天工作十小时。

(As 作为连词引导让步状语从句。)

14) You should study as your brother does.

你应该像你兄弟那样学习。

(As 作为连词引导方式状语从句。)

15) He is as ambitious as his brother (is).

他和他的兄弟一样雄心勃勃。

(As 作为连词引导比较状语从句。)

- 3 When 作为关系副词可引导定语从句,作为并列连词,可引出并列分句,而作为从属连词则可引导时间状语从句、让步状语从句与条件状语从句。

16)He was born in 1967 when China was in the turmoil of the Cultural Revolution.

他是 1967 年出生的,当时中国正处于文化大革命的动荡中。

(When 作为关系副词引导定语从句。)

17)She had been lying awake, turning from side to side after about an hour, when suddenly something made her sit up in bed and turn her head toward the door listening.

她一直躺在那里没睡着,大约有一个小时的光景,翻过来复过去,突然间不知什么东西让她一下坐了起来,她把头朝大门转过去仔细听着。

(When 为并列连词,引导并列分句。)

18)James pretended to be deaf when I spoke to him.

我和詹姆斯说话时,他假装听不见。

(When 为从属连词,引导时间状语从句。)

19)They have only three copies when we need five.

他们只有三本,可我们需要五本。

(When 为从属连词,引导让步状语从句。)

20)Let's start when you are ready.

如果你准备好了我们就开始吧。

(When 为从属连词,引导条件状语从句。)

4 同一连词可以担当不同角色的情况有时也会产生歧义。

21)As it becomes cold ,the old man no longer goes out.

因为天气变凉了,老人不再出门。

(As it becomes cold 被理解为原因状语从句。)

(或)当天气变凉时,老人不再出门。

(As it becomes cold 被理解为时间状语从句。)

22)As she grew older ,she became more and more interested in reading.

随着年龄的增大,她对阅读的兴趣也越来越大。

(As she grew older 被理解为时间状语从句。)

(或)因为年龄越来越大,她对阅读的兴趣也越来越大。

(As she grew older 被理解为原因状语从句。)

## 以 **And** 为代表的并列连词

### 🔗 **And** 与“和”不能处处画等号

1 And 往往是人们初学英语时接触到的第一个连词,许多人常常将它与汉语中的“和”画等号。列举人和事物时,这样翻译并不错,如 Mike and his wife“迈克和他的妻子”,Class One, Class Two and Class Three“一班、二班和三班”。但有些时候,硬将其译作“和”就很别扭,逻辑上根本说不通。

1) She wrote two letters in her office and posted them on her way home.

她在办公室写了两封信,然后在回家的路上将信投寄了出去。

(由 and 连接的这两个分句所表示的动作有先有后,此处的 and 相当于 and then,可在 and 后直接加副词 then.)

2) She sang and danced happily at the party.

她在派对上高兴得又唱又跳。

(同样是由 and 连接的两个动词,离开了上下文很难判断两个动作孰先孰后。)

3) Jack is smart and his brother is very dull.

杰克聪明,而他的兄弟却很笨。

(第二个分句和第一个分句意思刚好相反, and 后可加 in contrast 以突出对比关系。此处也可改用表示转折关系的并列连词 but.)

4) They dislike the boy—and that's not surprising.

他们讨厌那个男孩,这并不奇怪。

(后一分句是对前一分句的评注。)

5) I tried hard and I failed.

我努力试过,但失败了。

(前一分句有让步状语从句的意味。此处的 and 后可加 yet.)

6) Jack has long hair and he wears earrings.

杰克留长发,还带有耳环。

(后一分句在内容上是前一分句的补充或增述,为明确起见,可在 and 后加 also.)

7) Knock on the door, and it will be opened.

只要敲门,就会有人来开。

(And 接在祈使句后,用以表示结果。)

8) There are methods and methods.

方法有好的也有坏的。

9) There are books and books.

书有好有坏。

10) There are teachers and teachers.

老师有好的也有差的。

## 7 Go to see, Go and see 与 Go see

表示“去看”,英语有三种选择:go to see, go and see 与 go see.

1 Go to see 是最正规,也是最常见的用法。



- 1) He went to see his mother the day before yesterday.  
他前天去看过他的妈妈。
- 2) He will go to see his girl friend after work.  
他会在下班后去见他的女朋友。
- 2) Go and see 属口语。And 前常用的动词有 go ,come ,try ,run ,mind ,learn ,send ,try ,stay ,stop ,wait ,write ,remember。Take care ,hurry up 与 be sure 等也有类似的用法。此时的 and 相当于不定式符号 to ,但用 and 比用 to 语气重一些。
- 3) Try and get the work done today.  
设法今天完成这项工作。
- 4) I prefer to wait and see how things go.  
我愿意等着瞧事态会如何发展。
- 【注意】**  
Try 与 wait 须用祈使语气或不定式形式。因此 ,不能说 :  
He s trying and getting the work done today ,He always tries and gets. . . 或 He tried and got. . . 等。
- 5) You must mind and arrive there by seven.  
你必须注意在七点钟之前赶到那里。
- 6) I'll write and thank him.  
我会写信感谢他。
- 7) You will come and see us sometimes ,won't you ?  
你有空就来我们这里玩吧。
- 8) I'll be sure and go.  
我一定去。

9) Please stay and have some coffee.

请留下来喝点咖啡。

【注意】

A. And 前的其他动词,包括 go,虽然也经常以祈使语气或不定式的形式出现,但不排斥第三人称或过去式的形式。

a. He went and had a heart to heart talk with Michael yesterday.

昨天他去与迈克交心谈心了。

b. He usually stays and has dinner with other sportsmen after the match.

他通常在赛后留下来与其他运动员一道进餐。

B. 口语中,“go and + 另一动词”中的 go 有时“去”的意思非常弱。

C. What a fool to go and do such a thing!

干这种事多蠢啊!

Cf: Go and see what he is doing now.

去看看他在干什么。

3 省略 Go to see 中的 to 是美国英语的特殊用法。较 go and see 而言,go see 显得更随意一些。动词 come 也有类似用法。

10) Come have a drink.

来喝点什么。

11) Go get a doctor.

去找个医生来。

12) Go get whoever you want.

去找你需要的任何人。

13) He left his parents home to go live in New York.

他离开了父母的家到纽约住去了。

(此句如改为 He left his parents home and went to live in New York 也行,但过去式 went 后的 to 却不能省略。)

### § A B (,)and C ; A and B (,) and C 与 A B C

1) A B (,)and C 是语法成分对等的各项最常见的一种连接方式。

1) Dried , raw , and cooked , the apple also found its way into numerous colonial dishes , including apple sauces , puddings , stuffings , and many desserts.

殖民地时期的许多食品 ,像苹果酱、布丁、果馅以及许多甜点里面都有苹果 ,要么是干的 ,要么是生的 ,要么就是烹调过的。

(并列各项为名词 ,译成汉语时 ,以汉语特有的顿号代替了逗号。)

2) The stream turned , ran straight , turned again , and then seemed to stop. ( W. J. Wallace : The Dead Run )

小河转了个弯 ,径直往前流去 ,又转了个弯 ,然后便好像在那里停了下来。

(并列各项为动词。)

3) Some books are to be tasted , others to be swal-

lowed , and some few to be chewed and digested. . .

(Francis Bacon : “ Of Studies ”)

有些书可以品味 ,有些书可以吞食 ,少数的一些可以咀嚼、消化。

(此句并列的是三个分句。)

- 4) We produce a wide range of products , from oil , chemicals and plastics to fibres , textiles and magnetic media. ( Macziola and Grag White : Getting Ahead : Learner s Book )

我们的产品 ,从石油、化工、塑料到纤维、纺织品、磁体 ,应有尽有。

(该句将列举的6样产品分为两组 ,分别由 from 与 to 两介词连接 ,在两拨产品中均采用了 A ,B and C 的连接方式。)

- 2 A and B and C 这种连接方式似乎更强调并列各项间的平等地位。

- 5) Bachleitner looked at the truck and the trailers and the cards loaded on them , and he looked at the guards , and then he said , “ Do you mind telling me what this is all about ?” ( Stefan Heym : A True Story )

巴赫莱纳逐一检查了卡车、卡车后边的拖车以及上边承载的卡片 ,然后望着守车的卫士问道 :“ 请问 ,你们能解释一下这是怎么回事吗 ?”

(拖车原本与卡车是一体的 ,而车上的货更不能与车分开 ,但为了表现巴赫莱纳逐一仔细查看的情形 ,作者以多个 and 将拆散的各项以并列的方式串联起来。)

Cf: Herr Bachleitner was surprised when the large truck with two trailers, all of them piled high with tightly packed cards, drew up in the courtyard of his paper mill. (ibid.)

看到一辆大卡车带着两个拖车开进纸厂的院子里,捆得结结实实的卡片堆得老高,巴赫莱纳先生惊呆了。

(The large truck with two trailers 中的介词 with 很好地突出了 the large truck 的主体作用,使卡车与拖车融为一体。)

- 6) The patrol talked as they walked, and they talked of things that they longed for—of meat and of hot soup and of the richness of butter, of the prettiness of girls and of their smiles and of their lips and their eyes. (John Steinbeck: The Moon Is Down)

巡逻的士兵边走边聊。他们谈着他们渴望得到的东西:肉食、热汤、油腻的黄油,以及女孩子的美丽,女孩子的微笑,还有她们的嘴唇和眼睛。

(因谈话内容仅涉及饮食、男女两类,作者便以两组通过 and 连接起来的 of 短语表现它们。采用 A and B and C 结构可以给人一种谈话滔滔不绝的感觉。)

- 7) Gratitude takes three forms: a feeling in the heart, and expression in words, and a giving in return.

感恩有三种方式:内心感激,语言表示,有所报答。

- 8) It seemed that toys and clothes and books and magazines and phonograph records never got put away on

Saturdays and Sundays.

好像星期六星期天,玩具、衣服、书籍、杂志、留声机唱片等不必收拾似的。

(连用4个and以强调室内乱糟糟的情形。)

3 A ,B ,C 是罗列事物的另一种方式。它由 A ,B ( , )and C 模式省略 and 而成。

9) Like Dave , he asked nothing , gave nothing , expected nothing , and when he marched slowly toward the other dogs , even Spitz left him alone. ( Jack London : The Call of the Wild )

像达夫一样,他不要求什么,不付出什么,也不指望什么。当他向其他的狗慢慢地走过去时,甚至连斯皮兹都不敢惹他。

10) Buck treated the other dogs in a proud , severe manner , for he was king—over all the walking , creeping , flying things of Judge Miller s place , humans included. ( Jack London : The Call of the Wild )

巴克以一种傲慢、严厉的态度对待其他的狗,因为他是王,是米勒法官住处一切飞禽、走兽,包括人在内的所有动物的王。

(这里的并列成分实为 :all the walking things ,all the creeping things 与 all the flying things. )

11) I came , I saw , I conquered. ( Julius Caesar )

我来了,看到了,将它征服了。

(这是古罗马恺撒的名言。由三个分句构成的并列句仅以逗号分隔,读起来显得铿锵有力。)

12) We laughed , we sang , we danced.

我们欢笑 ,我们歌唱 ,我们手舞足蹈。

13) He held them , turned them , kissed them , hugged them , cried on them , held them out again , blinked at the little old people. ( Ray Bradbury : Mars Is Heaven !)

他抓住他们 ,转动他们 ,亲吻他们 ,拥抱他们 ,趴在他们身上哭 ,然后又将这些身体萎缩的老人们推开 ,眨巴着眼望着他们。

(这里描述的是宇航员们在火星上见到早已亡故现又复活的亲人们时的一系列表情与动作。从修辞的角度看 ,这种结构能给人紧张、急促、明快、利落的感觉。从语法的角度分析 ,该句看似复杂 ,但因只有一个主语 ,仍属简单句的范畴 ,而例 11 与例 12 虽然非常简短 ,但因各有三套主谓结构而应划入并列句的范围。)

## 9 Night and Day 与 Day and Night

1 汉语说“日日夜夜” ,“日”在前 ,“夜”在后 ,不能随意颠倒 ,但译成英语时 ,既可以译作 day and night ,也可以译作 night and day。只是前者更常见一些而已。

1) They are working day and night so that they can fulfill the task ahead of time.

他们正夜以继日地干 ,为的是能提前完成任务。

2) From then on , night and day , Buck never left the

bull , never gave him a moment s rest , never permitted him to eat or drink. ( Jack London : The Call of the Wild )

从那时起 ,巴克一刻也没离开那头驼鹿 ,不让它有一分钟的喘息机会 ,不让它吃 ,不让它喝。

- 2 有些以 and 或 or 连接的英语短语也像汉语的“日日夜夜”一样有着固定的词序 ,不能随意颠倒。

friend or foe 敌或友

body and soul 灵魂与肉体

man and wife 夫妻

food and water 食物和水

knife and fork 刀(与)叉

heart and soul 灵魂与肉体

law and order 法律与秩序

north and south 南北(与英语的次序刚好相反)

land and sea 陆地与海洋

pros and cons 赞成与反对

pen and paper 纸(与)笔

good or bad 好或坏

right or wrong 对或错

hot and cold 热与冷(汉语习惯说“冷热”)

black and white 黑与白

back and forth 来来回回

to and fro 来来去去



first and foremost 首先

here and now 此时此地

here and there 处处(一般不译作“这儿与那儿”)

- 3 有些以 and 连接的词组或者有了引申意义或者应视为一体，其前后次序更不能颠倒。

twists and turns 迂回曲折

fetch and carry 做杂务 打杂 当听差

ups and downs 盛衰 沉浮

cup and saucer 放在茶碟上的茶杯；一副杯碟  
(and 相当于 with)

watch and chain 系有链条的表(and 相当于 with)

bread and butter 涂有牛油的面包(and 相当于 with)

a rod and line 钓竿(and 相当于 with)

a horse and wagon 一辆马车

a carriage and pair 两匹马拖的马车  
(pair = a pair of horses)

a coach and six 六匹马拖的马车

toast and wine 在葡萄酒内浸过一下的烤面包

strawberry and cream 淋有奶油的草莓

salt and water 盐开水

the ins and outs 执政党与在野党

aim and end 终极目标

sum and substance 要点

mind and body 身心

high and dry 搁浅 孤立无援 落在时代潮流的后边

hum and haw 嗯嗯呢呢(表示踌躇或支吾等)

4 因被视为一体,有些以 and 连接的名词词组充当主语时便能接单数动词。

3)The bread and butter is served for breakfast.

早餐供应面包黄油。

Cf :The bread and the butter are stale.

面包和牛油都不新鲜。

(butter 前的定冠词 the 表明 bread 与 butter 是并列的两项东西。)

4)Salt and water makes the world go round.

盐水使得这个世界得以运转。

5)Honor and glory is his reward.

荣耀是对他的奖赏。

6)Time and tide waits for no man. ( A proverb )

时不我待。

7)The rise and fall of the tide is due to lunar influence.

潮涨潮落是月球引力导致的。

8)The horse and carriage is at the door.

马车就在门外。

9)The hammer and sickle was flying from the flagpole.

镰刀斧头旗在旗杆上飘扬。

5 当 and 连接的两个名词指同一人时,动词也用单数形式。

10)My friend and benefactor has come.

我的朋友兼恩人来了。

11) The novelist and poet is dead.

这位小说家兼诗人去世了。

6 成双成对的使用名词也是一种修辞手段,这种修辞手段的英文名称是 binomials。在书名中这种修辞手段的应用相当普遍。

12) Pride and Prejudice (Jane Austin)

《傲慢与偏见》

13) The Cop and the Anthem (O. Henry)

《警察与赞美诗》

14) Man and Superman (Bernard Shaw)

《人与超人》

15) The Prince and the Pauper (Mark Twain)

《王子与贫儿》

16) Sons and Lovers (D. H. Lawrence)

《儿子与情人》

## 10 Nice and Warm 与 Good and Cold

1 充当表语的形容词并列时,有时采用 A ,B ( , )and C 模式,有时采用 A and B and C 或 A ,B ,C 模式。

1) The quilt felt cold and hard.

这被子摸起来又冷又硬。

2) We felt hot , tired , and thirsty.

我们感觉炎热、疲惫与口渴。

3) They were soft , weak , and selfish , more and more out

of place in this harsh , primitive environment. ( Jack London : The Call of the Wild )

他们软弱、体质差又很自私 ,在这个充满了艰辛与原始的氛围中显得越来越不适应。

4) However , once you arrived there , the welcome will be full and warm and real. ( Alison R. Lanier : Living in the U. S. A )

然而 ,一旦你到了那里 ,(他们对你的)欢迎一定是极其热情而诚挚的。

5) Nace , on the other hand , was realistic , cautious , slow. ( James Ramsey Ullman : Top Man )

勒斯 ,刚好相反 ,他务实、谨慎、行动迟缓。

2 当一个名词由两个或两个以上的形容词修饰时 ,形容词之间通常不用 and 连接 ,有时甚至也不用逗号分隔。

6) It's been a long , long way to Siberia and a long , long wait at Moscow airport.

去西伯利亚的路远之又远 ,在莫斯科机场候机的时间长之又长。

7) In the distance they saw a little old gray house.

远处他们看到了一幢小小的陈旧的灰色房屋。

8) He was young , with large bright black eyes.

他很年轻 ,有着一双大而明亮的黑眼睛。

3 当两个表示颜色的形容词修饰同一名词时 ,形容词间须用 and 连接。

9) She's bought a blue and white swimming suit.

她买了件蓝白两色的游泳衣。

10) This is a black and white pig.

这是一头花猪。(身上有黑白两色的猪)

4 当两个形容词修饰同一复数名词,以表示不同或相反性质的事物时,形容词需用 and 连接。

11) He is very familiar with European and American traditions.

他对欧洲与美洲的传统非常熟悉。

12) They welcome large and small companies to do business with them.

他们欢迎大小公司都与他们做生意。

5 Nice and warm 与 good and cold 虽由 and 连接,所表示的却不是并列关系,nice 与 good 相当于副词 very。能够这样用的形容词还有 fine、rare、lovely 等。

13) It's nice and warm in the room.

房间里非常暖和。

(Nice and warm = very warm 或 nicely warm)

14) I want to make everything look nice and cosy.

我想使一切看上去都非常舒适。

(Nice and cosy = very cosy)

15) It's good and cold outside.

外边相当冷。

(Good and cold = quite cold)

16) The peaches are good and ripe.

这些桃子熟透了。

(Good and ripe = well ripe)

- 17) The old teacher will be fine and joyful when you go to see him.

你去看这位老教师,他会非常高兴的。

(Fine and joyful = very joyful)

- 18) It was a fine and useful file. (Stefan Heym : A True Story)

这是一个非常有用的档案。

- 19) She will be rare and busy now.

她此刻会很忙的。

(Rare and busy = very busy)

- 20) It was a lovely and warm day.

那是一个和暖的日子。

(A lovely and warm day = a delightfully warm day)

- 21) Every morning as soon as their eyes were open, they thought of this visit which was coming, and on the morning of the happy day, they were up bright and early.

每天早上—睁开眼,他们就会想那即将到来的访问,那令人愉悦的日子终于来了,一大早他们就起了床。

(Bright and early = very early)

- 22) He drove good and fast.

他车开得很快。

(Good and fast = very fast)

## 11 句首的 And

尽管有人认为不宜将 and 等并列连词放在一个句子的开头，但以 and 开始的句子并不鲜见。

1 以 and 开头的句子可用以补充或评论刚刚说过的话。

1) It was a convention where the expected things were said , the predictable things were done. It was a convention where the middle class and middle aged sat. It was a convention where there were few blacks and fewer beards. And that remains the Republican problem.

一言一行均如人们所料已成为习惯，被中产阶级与中年人所把持成了定规，黑人少，年长者更少成了传统。而这一直以来就是共和党的问题。

(由 and 开始的这个句子是对前边三句内容的概括与总结。)

2) A woman should take off any costume jewelry , except for one simple necklace or a pair of earrings. She should tone down her make up and forget about heavy perfume. And she should not wear pants. Any of those things might “ turn off ” her interviewer.

女性求职者除了佩戴一条式样简洁的项链和一对耳环外，其他首饰要全部取下。她只能化淡妆，不能用香气过浓的香水。此外，她不得穿短裤。因为这些东西会使招聘者“退避三舍”。

(由 and 开始的这个句子是对前边两句内容的补充。)

- 3) And all the time the farms grew larger and the owners fewer. And there were pitifully few farmers on the land any more. And the imported serfs were beaten and frightened and starved until some went home again , and some grew fierce and killed or driven from the country. And the farms grew larger and the owners fewer. ( John Steinbeck : The Grapes of Wrath )

农场一直在扩大 ,土地的拥有者却一直在减少。而那少得可怜的农户也所剩无几。从外边引进的农奴遭到了毒打、恐吓 ,还有饥饿的威胁 ,有的又回家了 ,有的变凶了 ,然后被杀死或撵出了这个国家。而农场还在扩大 ,农场的拥有者还在减少。

(这是一个极端的例子 ,一连四个句子均以 and 开头。一头一尾两个句子虽然字面上基本相同 ,我们仍然可以通过 and 感到一种层层递进的力量。)

- 2 And 开头的句子可引出一个符合前边谈话逻辑的问题。

- 4) “ He used to be so handsome. ”

“ And now ? ”

“ 他从前很帅。 ”

“ 现在呢 ? ”

- 5) “ Why not ? The world was a different place in 1905 , they could have kept it a secret much more easily. ”

“ But the work , Hinkston , the work of building a



complex thing like a rocket , oh , no , no. ” The captain looked at his shoes , looked at his hands , looked at the house , and then at Hinkston.

“ And they came up here , and naturally the houses they built were similar to Earth houses because they brought the cultural architecture with them. ”

“ And they've lived here all these years ? ” said the captain. ( Ray Bradbury : Mars Is Heaven ! )

“ 为什么不行 ? 1905 年的时候情况和现在不同 , 保密要容易得多。 ”

“ 可是 , 希克斯顿 , 要建造火箭这样复杂的东西 , 哦 , 那可瞒不住。 ” 队长看了看自己的鞋子 , 看了看自己的双手 , 再看看房子 , 然后转向希克斯顿。

“ 他们到这儿来了 , 自然他们盖的房子就会和地球上的房子差不多 , 因为他们会带来地球上的建筑文化。 ”

“ 那他们这么多年来一直住在这里吗 ? ” 队长问。

( 在希克斯顿与队长的这段对话中有两个句子是以 and 开头的 , 前者既是一种解释 , 也是对自己说过的话的一种补充 , 而后者则是队长根据希克斯顿的逻辑向他提出的新问题。 )

6) “ I had to fly to Europe—Montpellier—to give that paper. . . ”

“ And ? ” ( Erich Segal : Man , Woman and Child )

“ 当时我得飞往欧洲—蒙彼利埃—去宣读论文…… ”

“ 后来呢 ? ”

( 这里仅用一个 and 就把人物急于要知道下文的心情表现了

出来。)

- 3 电台广播员或宣布某件事的人可用以 and 开头的句子转换话题或开始一个话题。

7) "And now the terrorist attack in London. "

现在谈谈伦敦的恐怖主义袭击。(电台广播员语)

(有人将 and now 视为固定搭配,把它译作“那么,且”。)

Cf :And now , let s remember the beginning of the story.

那么,让我们回想一下这个故事开始的情节吧。

8) "And here is a poem , by John Greenleaf Whittier , an American poet who , for the greater part of his life , was engaged in the struggle to put down slavery. "

“这里有一首诗,是约翰·格林里夫·惠蒂尔,一位美国诗人写的。诗人将一生中的大部分时间都投入了消灭奴隶制的斗争。”

## 12 口语中的 And 与 And so

And 不仅是英语中出现频率最高的连词,也是英语中词频仅次于 the 与 of 的单词。口语中 and(包括 and so)的出现频率似乎又高于书面语,因为人们可以通过它将支离破碎的想法以及表示这些想法的句子成分串联起来。这样构成的句子往往很长,结构也比较松散。在表现未成年人或没有受过多少教育的人的言语或思想活动的文学作品中可以找到大量的例证。

1) Well , we had the loveliest day up among the hills that

you could possibly imagine , and Father caught such big specimens that he felt sure that Mother couldn't have landed them anyway , if she had been fishing for them , and Will and I fished too , though we didn't get so many as Father , and the two girls met quite a lot of people that they knew as we drove along , and there were some young men friends of theirs that they met along the stream and talked to , and so we all had a splendid time. ( Stephen Leacock : How We Kept Mother's Day )

是呀 ,我们在山上碰到了你可以想象得到的最好的天气 ,父亲捕到了他确信母亲就是钓到了也拉不上岸的特大的鱼 ,威尔和我也去钓鱼了 ,不过我们的收获却不及父亲。两个姑娘碰到了不少她们在来这里的路上结识的人 ,沿小溪边她们碰到并谈过话的人中有些年轻的男士 ,因此我们都挺开心。

2) Well , the days went along , and the river went down between its banks again ; and about the first thing we done was to bait one of the big hooks with a skinned rabbit and set it and catch a catfish that was as big as a man , being six foot two inches long , and weighed over two hundred pounds. ( Mark Twain : The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn )

就这样 ,日子一天一天地过去了 ,河水又在它的堤岸间流淌起来 ,我们干的第一件事可能就是在一个大鱼钩上挂上剥了皮的兔子作钓饵并把它放进河里 ,我们钓到的一条鲶鱼有一

人高,足足有6英尺2英寸长,重量有两百多磅。

- 3) If you really want to hear about it, the first thing you'll probably want to know is where I was born, and what my lousy childhood was like, and how my parents were occupied and all before they had me, and all that David Copperfield kind of crap, but I don't feel like going into it, if you want to know the truth. (J. D. Salinger: *The Catcher in the Rye*)

如果你真想听我说的话,恐怕你最想了解的是,我在哪里出生,我那糟糕的童年是什么样的,生下我之前我的父母都干了些什么,还有那些大卫·科波菲尔式的废话,但我不想谈那些,如果你想知道真相的话。

(与例1和例2一样,这段话也是从一本以未成年人为主人公的文学作品中摘录的,小说的叙述人是正遭受着成长之痛的霍尔顿。)

- 4) Well, we were getting dressed to go out one night and I was, we were just leaving, just walking out the door and the baby was in bed, and all of a sudden the doorbell rings and Larry says, "There's somebody here for you," and I walk in to the living room and she's there with both kids. (*Language* 杂志 第55卷, 1979)

对了,有天晚上我们正着装要出去,我,我们正好要走,刚出门,婴儿在床上,突然间门铃响了,拉里说,“有人找你”,我走进起居室,只见她带着两个孩子在那儿等我。

(一连五个 and 将十分松散的内容串在一起。从人称代词与

断断续续的思绪及文句看,这段文字当属口语体。为了生动起见,自 all of a sudden 起,叙述者突然改用了历史现代时。)

5) They were hungry, and they were fierce. And they had hoped to find a home, and they found only hatred. Okies—the owners hated them because the owners knew they were soft and the Okies strong, that they were fed and the Okies hungry; and perhaps the owners had heard from their grandfathers how easy it is to steal land from a soft man if you are fierce and hungry and armed.

(John Steinbeck: The Grapes of Wrath)

他们挨饿,他们强悍。他们希望找到一个家园,得到的却是仇恨。农场主们讨厌俄克拉荷马州来的那帮人,因为他们清楚自己是软弱的,而这帮人却很强大,他们知道自己是被这帮人养着的,而这帮人却在挨饿。也许农场主们已从他们的祖辈那里了解到,在你强悍、饥饿、武装起来的情况下从一个软弱者手中盗取土地有多么容易。

(在这一小段话中就用了8个 and.)

**【注意】**

A. 在正式的文体中,应尽量减少不必要的并列关系。因为过多地使用并列关系会给人单调乏味的感觉。Edward A. Dornan 等编著的 The Brief English Handbook 要求人们避免下边这样的句子:

a. Alice Adams is a successful writer, and she lives in San Francisco, and she has received grants from the

National Foundation for the Arts.

Cf : Alice Adams , a successful San Francisco writer , has received grants from the National Foundation for the Arts.

成功的旧金山作家艾丽丝·亚当已获得国家艺术基金的资助。

B. 在没有上下文可以参照的情况下 , 连词 and 有时会造成歧义。

b. Larry and Michael quarreled this morning.

拉里与迈克今天早上吵架了。

(或)今天早上 拉里吵架了 , 迈克也吵架了。

(前一种情况如果说 Larry quarreled with Michael this morning 会更清楚一些 ; 后一种情况 , 如加上 separately 也可消除歧义。)

c. She is very kind towards old men and women.

她对老大爷老太太很仁慈。

(或)她对老大爷与女人很仁慈。

(形容词 old 既可被看成是 men 的修饰语 , 也可以被理解为 women 的修饰语 , 为了避免歧义 , 不妨在 women 前边再加一个 old ; 如作后一种解释时 , old 仅被视为 men 的修饰成分。为了避免歧义 , 可以颠倒一下词序 , 将原句改成 : She is very kind towards women and old men. )

d. When she was young , she could dance and sing very well.

她年轻时唱歌跳舞都不错。

(或)年轻时,她能跳舞,歌也唱得不错。

(依照前一种解释,very well 是 dance 与 sing 共同的修饰语。而按照后一种理解,very well 仅修饰与它靠得最近的 sing。为了消除歧义,要表示前一意思时,不妨将其写成: When she was young, she could both dance and sing very well; 如作后一种解释,不妨写成: When she was young, she could dance and she sang very well. )

### 13 And 后的省略及 And that 结构

1 在由 and 连接的并列句中,有时可从后一个分句里省略与前一分句里相同的词语。

1) He teaches French and his wife Japanese.

他教法语,而他的妻子教日语。

(第二分句内的动词因与前一分句内的动词相同而被省略。)

2) He was born in Wuhan and his wife in Beijing.

他生于武汉,他的妻子生于北京。

(第二分句省略了与前一分句相同的 was born. )

3) He came from the United States, and his wife from Russia.

他来自美国,而他的妻子却来自俄国。

(后一分句内省略了 came,此外,句中的 and 也可换用 but 以突出夫妻二人背景差异。)

4) The furniture is very old and the carpet well worn.

家具非常陈旧 ,地毯也磨损得很厉害。

(后一分句内省略了动词 is.)

- 5) If you can find the letter and (if) you are interested in it , I'll let you have it.

如果你能找到那封信 ,而又对它感兴趣的话 ,我就把信给你。

(此处可省略 and 后的连词 if.)

- 2 And 分句的省略有时会超出这一格局 ,从而出现 and 前后语法地位不对等的情况。学习者可以将这种情况作为一个固定的句型来记忆 ,此时的 and 有“而且”、“竟然”等强调意味。

- 6) We must do something about it , and something effective.

我们必须对此采取某种行动 ,而且是有效的行动。

- 7) We must go to help him , and immediately.

我们必须去帮助他 ,而且马上就得去。

- 8) “ You'll give me the whole lot , and now ,” the man said , reaching forward and trying to take the camera by force. ( W. J. Wallace : The Dead Run )

“你得把整个胶卷都交给我 ,现在就得交。”那人说着 ,便将手伸了过来 ,试图夺过相机。

- 3 在 and 后以 that 代表前一分句中的某一个词或某一个短语 ,这样既可避免重复 ,又能加强语势 ,

- 9) The middle aged woman speaks English , and that very well.

这个中年妇女能讲英语 ,而且讲得很好。



(That 相当于 she speaks English. )

10) He will come , and that very soon.

他会来 ,而且很快就来。

(That 相当于 he will come. )

11) You must tell her , and that immediately.

你应该告诉她 ,马上告诉她。

(That 相当于 you must tell her. )

Cf :You must tell her immediately.

(意思相同 ,但强调的意味不及前者。)

You must tell her , and tell her immediately.

(意思相同 ,且有一定的强调意味。)

12) They finished the work , and that ahead of schedule.

他们完成了任务 ,而且是提前完成的。

**4** 在 and 后加名词或名词短语以表示对前述事实的看法与评价。

13) You sent the old woman home , and a very good thing to do.

你把这位老妇送回家了 ,这是一件很好的事。

14) The two boys were born in the same town , and no mistake.

这两个男孩是在同一个镇上出生的 ,这一点千真万确。

## **14** Both...and As well as 与 Not only...but (also)

**1** Both...and 是 and 的强调形式。

1) Both Buddhism and Islam are world religions.

佛教与伊斯兰教都是世界性宗教。

(“Both Buddhism and Islam”在句中充当主语。)

Cf :Buddhism and Islam are world religions.

佛教与伊斯兰教是世界性宗教。

2) They feel both anxiety and joy.

他们既感到焦虑又感到高兴。

3) They feel both anxious and joyful.

他们既感到焦虑又感到高兴。

(与例2意思相同,both...and 短语均在句中充当表语,但例2中的并列成分为名词,例3中的并列成分为形容词。)

4) The Japanese morale was shattered, both at the front and at home.

日本人的士气被挫败了,在 frontline 和国内都一样。

(Both at the front and at home 在句中充当状语成分。)

5) These articles both mystified and infuriated the workers.

这些文章令工人们既疑惑又生气。

(Both...and 连接两个动词充当句子的谓语成分。)

2 As well as 作为并列连词可译作“(除……之外)又”,“不但……而且”等。在含有 A as well as B 的句式中,强调的部分是 A。

6) He speaks Russian as well as English and French.

他不但会讲英语和法语还能讲俄语。

7) His children as well as his wife were invited to the banquet.

不仅他的夫人 ,就连他的孩子们也应邀参加了这次宴会。

8) It has symbolic as well as economic significance.

它既有经济意义 ,又有象征意义。

9) We see its quiet light in the morning as well as in the evening.

我们不仅在黄昏 ,而且在早晨也可以看到它平静的光芒。

(As well as 在此连接两个介词短语。)

**【注意】**

As well as 有时会引导比较状语从句的 as...as 结构混淆。

a. He studies German as well as French.

他既学法语也学德语。

(As well as 为并列连词。)

他德语学得和法语一样好。

(第二个 as 引导一个省略了若干成分的比较状语从句。)

**3** Not only...but (also)与 as well as 相当。不过 ,在含有 not only A but (also)B 的句式中 ,强调的部分是 B ,而不是 A。

10) He speaks not only English and French but also Russian.

他不但会讲英语和法语还能讲俄语。

Cf : He speaks Russian as well as English and

French.

(意思同上, as well as 结构与 not only... but also 结构可相互转换, 但应注意词序的变化。)

11) She plays not only the piano, but also the violin.

她不仅弹钢琴, 还拉小提琴。

(此句如写成 She not only plays the piano, but also the violin 也可以, 但显得不够正规, 因为 not only 后边接的是动宾词组 plays the piano, 而 but also 后接的却是名词 the violin, 前后不平衡。)

4 涉及主谓一致的问题时, both... and 后一律接复数动词, 在 A as well as B 结构中, 谓语动词须与 A, 即要强调的部分保持一致, 而在 not only A but also B 结构中, 谓语动词则与 B, 即该句式要强调的部分, 保持一致。

12) Both Mr. Smith and Mrs. Smith have participated in the activity.

史密斯先生与史密斯夫人都参加了这一活动。

13) His wife as well as his children was invited to the school's party.

不仅他的孩子们, 就连他的妻子也得到了参加学校聚会的邀请。

(此处的谓语部分受到 His wife 的影响, 用了单数第三人称, 而例 7 中强调的是 his children, 故用 were invited。)

14) I as well as they am highly satisfied with the result.

不仅他们, 我对这个结果也非常满意。

15) Not only the earth but also the other planets move round the sun.

不仅地球 其他行星也绕太阳运转。

## 以 **But** 为代表的并列连词

### 15 But 与 Not...but

1 作为并列连词 ,but 常译作“但是”。由它连接的词、短语、从句等存在着对比、对立或对照的关系。从语法的角度看 ,由 but 连接的两部分是对等的 ,但就意义而言 ,but 后的部分才是语句的重心。因此 ,汉语里有“在‘但是’后边做文章”一说 ,英语中也有 but me no buts(别跟我但是但是的)这样的说法。

1) She is young but very experienced.

她年龄不大 ,但很有经验。

(该句也可以写成 She is young , but she is very experienced。 But 后添加 she is ,简单句就变成了并列句。)

2) A busy man is plagued with one desire , but an idle one with a thousand. (A proverb)

忙人为一个欲望而烦恼 ,闲人被无数欲望所折磨。

(两分句并列 ,后一分句内省略了 is plagued。)

3) She played some tunes but did not sing a song.

她弹了几只曲子 ,但一只歌也没唱。

4) She majors in English , but her boy friend majors in mechanics.

她主修英语 ,但她的男朋友却是机械专业的。

(两分句并列。后一分句中的 majors 可以省略。)

5) He wanted to study abroad , but his parents told him not to.

他想去国外学习 ,但他父母却叫他别去。

(后一分句在不定式符号 to 后省略了 study abroad. )

6) If we do a job with skill and ease , we will be looked as VIPs , but if we are unable to do as much as we would like to , we will be small potatoes.

如果我们在工作中游刃有余 ,就会被看成大人物 ;要是在工作中力不从心 ,就会被人看作小人物。

(这是一个主从复合句 ,由 but 连接的两个分句各含有一个 if 从句。)

7) Entertainment itself is not sin , but something that can bring certain happiness will at the same time leave trouble many times that of happiness.

欢娱本身并不是罪孽 ;但是 ,能带来一定乐趣的东西 ,同时也会留下比乐趣本身大出许多倍的烦恼。

8) Fools cut their fingers , but wise men cut their thumbs.

( A proverb )

傻瓜切手指 ,而聪明人却会切掉大拇指。 /聪明人干蠢事蠢得更厉害。

2 将 not 与 but 连用以突显前后的反差 ,并使 but 以后的内容得到强调。 Not... but... 在句中常译作“不是……而是……” ,有时也可译做“但是”。

9) My bike is not black but blue.

我的自行车不是黑色的 ,而是蓝色的。

(连接两个形容词。)

Cf My bike is not black. It is blue.

(同上句意思基本相同,但前者不仅简洁,且更好地突出了 my bike 的颜色特征。)

10) This is not mine but yours.

这不是我的而是你的。

(连接两个物主代词。)

11) He drives not carefully but slowly.

他开车不够细心,但开得很慢。

(连接两个副词。)

12) He doesn't ski but skates.

他不会滑雪但会溜冰。

(连接两个谓语动词。)

13) The letter is addressed not to me but to you.

这封信不是写给我的而是写给你的。

(连接两个介词短语。)

14) Our greatest glory consists not in never falling, but in rising every time we fall.

最大的荣耀不在于永不跌倒,而在于每一次跌倒后都能重新站起来。

15) Live not to eat, but eat to live. (A proverb)

活着不是为了吃,但吃是为了活着。

(并列的部分为两个不定式短语。)

16) Not that I don't want to go, but that I have no time.

不是我不想去,而是没有时间。



(“Not that. . . , but that”结构通过前后对比能更好地表达造成某一事实的真实原因。有的语法学家倾向于将它归入须成对使用的关联连词。详见“Now that 与 Not that. . . but that”一节。)

- 3 出现在句首的 but 有如下四重功能 :一、表达不满或反对 ;二、表示话题的转变 ;三、表示惊叹 ;四、承接上文 ,表示转折关系。

17)“ It s time to go to bed , Mike !”

“ But it s only nine o'clock. ”

“ 迈克 ,该睡觉了 !”

“ 可还只有九点钟呀。”

(以 but 开头的句子表现了迈克对要他这么早便上床睡觉的不满。)

18)“ Somebody wants you on the telephone. ”

“ But nobody knows I m here. ”

“ 有你的电话。”

“ 可是没谁知道我在这里呀。”

(以 but 开始的句子表现了说话者的怀疑态度。)

19)But now to the main subject.

那么现在进入正题吧。

(这是转入正题前的开场白。)

20)“ He has come out first. ”

“ But that s terrific !”

“ 他得了第一。”

“ 哇 ,那太棒了 !”

(虽然 but 并不是感叹词,但这里不妨将它译作“哇”,表惊叹。)

21) It goes against the grain to begin a sentence with and or but. But give it a try. A sentence beginning with a conjunction will almost always call attention to itself.

人们往往觉得以 and 或 but 开头的句子有些别扭。但你不妨试一试。以连词开头的句子几乎总能引起人们的关注。

22) Some said he made his living by trading cheap beads and liquor to the Indians for fine furs. But although he was mean and dishonest, he had never actually broken the law.

有人说,他靠以廉价的珠子、烈酒换印第安人的优质皮毛为生。但尽管他心地不好,又不老实,却不曾干过犯法的事。

(有人会问,怎么能将 but 与 although 用在同一个句子呢? But 与 although,一个是并列连词,一个是从属连词,在同一个句子中,要表示转折关系,要么用 but,要么用 although,不得两者兼用。如果不考虑上文,此处仅用 although 就够了: Although he was mean and dishonest, he had never actually broken the law. 但句首的 but 是承接上文而来的,上文说他爱占印第安人的便宜,下文说他并不曾违犯法律,这里便有一层转折关系。)

传统语法极力反对将 and, but, nor, for, yet, or, so 等连词放在一个句子的开头,但如今这种用法已相当普遍。

## 16 Yet And yet 与 But yet

1 作为表示转折意思的连词 ,yet 可译为“然而 ,可是 ,却 ,而”等。

1) I've slept eight full hours , yet I'm still sleepy.

我睡了整整八个小时 ,可还是想睡。

2) This is a glorious yet difficult task.

这是一项光荣而又艰巨的任务。

3) They did their best , yet they failed.

他们尽了最大的努力 ,但还是失败了。

(因两分句的主语相同 ,因此可省略后一分句中的 they 而将该句变成简单句 :They did their best yet failed. )

4) In 1960 , 471 people were tried in this country for murder. Yet out of that total only seven were hanged.

1960年 ,在这个国家里有 471 人因谋杀罪受到审判 ,然而他们中仅有 7 人被执行绞刑。

(为了突出前后两种情况的巨大反差 ,由 yet 引出的分句变成了独立句。)

5) The tongue is not steel , yet it cuts. (A proverb)

舌非钢铁 ,(但)照样割人。

Cf :Words cut more than swords.

话比剑更伤人。

6) Love your neighbor , yet pull not down your fence. (A proverb)

爱你的邻居 ,但不可拆墙。

2) And yet 与 but yet 的意思与用法均相同 ,常译作“然而 ,可是 ,却”等。

7) The story is odd , and yet it is true.

这个故事很离奇 ,但却是真实的。

8) She failed again , but yet she wasn't discouraged.

她又失败了 ,可她并不气馁。

(以上两句中的 and yet 与 but yet 可以互换 ,意思不变。)

## 17 Nevertheless , However , Only 与 Still

1) Nevertheless 通常用作副词 ,意为“然而 ,不过 ,仍然”等 ,有时也具有连词的功能 ,表示转折关系。

1) He met with some special difficulties in the work , nevertheless he did not lose heart and tided over them one after another.

在这项工作中他遇到过一些特殊的困难 ,但他并没有气馁 ,而是逐个克服了它们。

2) He is clever , nevertheless he often makes mistakes.

他很聪明 ,但他仍经常犯错误。

3) He was tired ; nevertheless , he kept working.

尽管(他)累了 ,但他还继续工作。

### 【注意】

在下列句子中 ,nevertheless 只有副词的功能 ,转折关系主要由其他连词如 but 充当。

a. He was tired , but he kept working nevertheless.

(与例3意思相同。)

b. What you said was true but it was nevertheless unkind.

你说的都是对的,但态度不友善。

**2** However 用作连词表示转折关系时,是比 but 更为正式的说法。与 but 相比,however 在句中的位置要灵活一些。连接两个分句时, but 只能出现在分句的前边,而 however 却可以出现在句首、句末或句中,而以置于句中、前后用逗号分隔的情形较为多见。

4) Losing at games doesn't matter to some women. Most men, however, can't stand it.

在游戏中输掉,对一些女人而言,并算不了什么,但绝大多数男人却感觉无法忍受。

5) Certainly he apologized. However, I won't forgive him.

他的确道歉了,但我不会原谅他。

(尽管出现在第二个句子的开头,但从语义的角度看, however 在前后两句间仍然扮演着连词的角色。)

6) He said that it was so; he was mistaken, however.

他说情况是这样,但他错了。

**3** Only 在口语中可用作连词,表示转折关系,常译作“但是,可是,不过”等。

7) You may go, only come back early.

你可以去,但要早点回来。

8) You may use any of these tools, only you must replace it after use.

你可以使用这里的任何工具,但是用后必须归还原处。

9) He very much wanted to buy the house , only he could not afford it.

他很想买这幢房子 ,可是买不起。

4 Still 与本组的其他几个词一样 ,平时多用作副词 ,有时兼具连词的功能 ,有的语法学家因此称它们为半连接词或连接副词。

10) He s poor , still , he s honest.

他虽然穷 ,但很诚实。

(该句中的 still 完全可用 however 置换 ,意思不变。)

11) It s a very unpleasant affair , still , we can t change it.

这是一桩令人很不愉快的事 ,然而 ,我们无法改变它。

12) This novel is not perfect ; still , it is very good.

这本小说虽不完美 ,但仍是一本好书。

#### 【注意】

为了强调转折关系 ,可在 still 出现的句子中加用 but。如 :  
She is not pretty nor clever , but still she is loved by everybody. (她既不漂亮 ,也不聪明 ,但还是人见人爱。 )但此时的 still 就只能算是副词了。

## 18 While ,When ,Whereas 与 Where

1 While 常用作从属连词 ,引导时间状语从句或让步状语从句 ,但也可以用作并列连词 ,表示比较或对照关系 ,此时常译作“而 然而”等。用作并列连词时 ,while 分句多置于句尾 ,前边常有逗号与另一分句隔开。

1) Jane is slender , while her sisters are stout.

珍妮长得苗条 ,而她的几个姊妹却很胖。

(此句也可写成 While Jane is slender , her sisters are stout ,意思没有多大的变化 ,这或许是 while 被纳入并列连词的一个原因 ,因为前后两分句是平等的才可以互换位置。有关 while 作为从属连词的一些用法本书将在相关章节中逐一介绍。)

2) Good news never goes beyond the gate , while bad news spread far and wide. (A proverb)

好事不出门 ,坏事传千里。

(汉译中 ,连词 while 并没有出现 ,对比的意味是通过词义及对仗的句式表现的。此句也可译为 :好消息总出不了门 ,而坏消息却可以到处传播。)

3) A reed before the wind lives on , while mighty oaks do fall. (A proverb)

小草耐风暴 ,大树容易倒。

4) John saves his money , while his twin brother spends all he gets.

约翰攒钱 ,而他的双胞胎兄弟却把挣来的钱全都花光。

2 When 在很多情况下均用作从属连词 ,引导状语从句 ,但在特定的情况下也可以用作并列连词 ,意为“就在那个时候 (and at that time) ”。

5) She was crossing the street when (suddenly) a policeman stopped her .

她正过马路, 突然间一个警察拦住了她。

- 6) He had just shut the vault, and still had his hand on one of the locks to the outer door, when a corporal arrived to retrieve him for breakfast. (John Barron: The Sergeant Who Opened the Door)

他刚关上地下室的门, 手还没离开外边那道门上的锁, 就有一个下士突然来了, 换他去吃早餐。

- 7) She was just to open the window and shout at the dog to frighten it, when she stopped and stood quite still.

她正准备开窗并大声吼叫吓唬那只狗, 却突然停住了, 站在那里一动不动。

- 8) I had only got into the train when the door shut.

我刚踏入车厢, 门就关上了。

- 9) I had started to cross the street when all of a sudden I bounced off something hard and fell flat on my face.

我已经在过街了, 突然间被什么硬东西绊了一下, 便面朝下直挺挺地趴倒了。

#### 【注意】

用作并列连词的 when 有时会 and 副词 suddenly 同时出现。即使 suddenly 不出现, 这种句型本身也有“突如其来”的意思, 这时 when 分句是整个句子的语义重心, 而其他充当状语的 when 从句却要依附于主句。因此, 翻译时, 不得将这样的 when 译成“当……的时候”。其他 when 从句既可以出现在



主句前,也可以出现在主句后,而由 when 引导的并列分句却只能出现在句子的末尾。

- 3** Whereas 表示对比、对立关系,常译作“然而,却,另一方面,反之”等。在法律等公文中,whereas 常译作“因……的缘故,鉴于”等。

10) He is very rich, whereas his brothers are extremely poor.

他很富裕,而他的兄弟们却极其贫困。

11) Truth is a trust, whereas falsehood is treason.

真理是一种信赖,而谬误却意味着背叛。

12) In those days, most people listened to the radio, whereas today, most people do not. They are more interested in TV.

在那些日子里,多数人都听广播,而今天多数人不听了。他们对电视更感兴趣。

13) His kids want to live in big cities, whereas he himself prefers to stay at the small town.

他的孩子们想在大城市生活,他本人却愿意呆在小镇上。

- 4** 通常引导地点状语从句的 where 有时也可以像 whereas 那样表示对比与对立关系。只是该用法不及 whereas 普通而已。

14) They want a house, where we would rather live in a flat.

他们想要一幢房子,而我们却情愿住公寓。

15) They live in a big house , where their parents live in a small apartment.

他们住宽大的房子 ,而他们的父母却住在狭小的公寓里。

## 以 Or 为代表的并列连词

### 19 Or 并非永远意味着选择

1 Or 通常意味着“选择”。

1) Would you like some coffee or tea ?

你是要茶还是咖啡？

(此句也可写成 :What would you like , coffee or tea ?)

2) Trust me not at all or all in all.

要么不信任我 , 要么完全信任我。

3) The costs of progress are all too often ignored , concealed or written off.

进步所付出的代价往往不是被忽视 , 就是被掩盖 , 要么 , 便被一笔勾销。

4) Which color do you like best , white or gray or black ?

你最喜欢哪种颜色 , 白色 , 灰色还是黑色？

(此处也可以像 and 那样 , 只用一个 or , 写成 white , gray or black. )

5) Men might vary in height or weight or color , just as 6 is different from 8 , but there was little other difference.

(John Steinbeck : The Moon Is Down )

人与人的差别只在身高、体重或肤色 , 就像数字 6 不同于数字 8 一样 , 但其他方面就几乎没有区别了。

6) Others look red , or green , or yellow , or pure white.

另外一些看上去或红 ,或绿 ,或黄 ,或纯白。

- 7) He may study law or medicine or engineering , or he may enter into trade.

他可以学习法律、医学或工程 ,他也可以进入商界从商。

(前两个 or 使 law ,medicine 及 engineering 得以并列 ,而  
后一个 or 则使两个以 he may 开始的从句得以并列。只有  
从句的并列才能构成有一套以上主谓结构的并列句。)

- 8) Can I use this clean towel or must I leave it for the visitors ?

我可以用这个干净的毛巾呢 ,还是要将它留给来访者 ?

(这是一个以 or 连接的并列句。)

- 2 Or 用以说明、修饰或更正刚才说过的话。

- 9) I got home late last night or early this morning.

我昨晚深夜 ,说得更确切些 ,应是今天一大早到家的。

- 10) The man was a fool , or at least incompetent.

这家伙不是一个傻瓜 ,至少也是无能之辈。

- 11) There was nothing more he wanted , or so he thought.

再也没有什么是他想要的了 ,至少他是这么认为的。

- 12) It is a pillar , or more correctly , a column.

这是一根柱子 ,说得更确切点 ,是根圆柱。

- 13) The emu , or Australian ostrich , does not sit on its eggs.

鸸鹋 ,又称澳大利亚鸵鸟 ,是不孵卵的。

- 14) Among these was a belief in many gods identified with

the sun , moon , and objects of nature such as mountains , trees , and springs—all thought to be endowed with magic or supernatural powers that shamans or medicine men could in part guess and take direction from. ( Lewis Paul Todd and Merle Curti : Rise of the American Nation )

这中间有一个对多神的信仰 ,太阳是神 ,月亮是神 ,自然界的一些东西 ,如山脉、树木、泉水等都是神 ,在他们看来 ,这些东西都被赋予了某种魔力或者说超自然力。对此 ,shamans ,即巫医们可以部分地猜测到 ,并能从中获得某种指引。

(Magic or supernatural powers 中的后半部分是对 magic 的解释或补充 ,而 shamans or medicine men 的后半部分则是作者对 shamans 这个生僻字的注释。因此用“即”字来译 or. )

15)She s a psychologist—or rather , a psychoanalyst.

她是位心理学家 ,更确切地说 ,是一位精神分析学家。

(Or rather 比单个 or 意思更明确。)

16)The whole journey of 25 ,000 li or about 8000 miles was covered on foot.

全程两万五千里 ,约合八千英里 ,完全步行。

(这里的 or 提示单位的换算 ,对于不了解中国 li (里)的读者而言 ,将 li 换算成 mile 也是对前文的一种修饰或说明。)

## 20 Or 与 And 的互补及对立

1 当否定句中有两个对等的宾语或状语时,习惯上不用 and 而用 or 连接,以否定二者。

1) I do not like coffee or tea.

我不喜欢咖啡和茶。

(此时的 or 不能译作“或者”而要译作“和”。)

2) The situation is just not fair to the children or their parents.

这种情况对孩子及其父母都不公平。

3) Price is not always an indicator of quality or suitability.

价格不总是质量的指标,也不总是适用性的指标。

4) The troops were not wanting in strength or courage.

这些部队并不缺少力量与勇气。

5) He did not write legibly or correctly.

他写得既不清楚也不正确。

6) No smoking or spitting.

请勿吸烟吐痰。

(不能说: No smoking and spitting. 那样会给人“吸烟同时吐痰”才被禁止的错觉。)

7) He didn't speak clearly or correctly.

他讲得既不清楚也不正确。

Cf He didn't speak clearly and correctly.

他不曾讲得既清楚又正确。

(Clearly and correctly 被看作一个意群,当它出现在否定词后时,其意为没有同时做到这两点,即可能做到了清楚,但不正确,或做到了正确,但不清楚。)

- 8) The moon had no seas, lakes or rivers or water in any form. There are no forests, prairies or green fields and certainly no towns or cities.

月球上没有海、湖和河,也没有任何形式的水,没有森林、草原和绿色的田野,也肯定没有小镇和城市。

- 2 And/or 常见于法律和商业文书,意思是“和/或”,“A and/or B”意味着三种选择:A, B, A and B。

- 9) That may be done by veteran workers and/or young workers.

那事可由老工人和(或)青年工人来做。

- 10) In the past, students with severe and/or multiple disabilities were routinely excluded from public schools.

过去有严重残疾和(或)多种残疾的学生照例会被排斥在公立学校之外。

- 11) How much time will it take for students to develop and/or acquire the skill or accomplishments?

学生要开发与/或获取这种技能或成就得花多少时间?

- 12) If the appliance is defective, write directly to the manufacturer and/or complain to your local consumer protection service.

如果这个器具有瑕疵的话,请直接给厂家写信和/或向当地消费者保护机构投诉。

13) Others have cocktails before dinner , wine with the meal , and /or after-dinner drinks. ( Alison R. Lanier : Living in the U. S. A. )

另外一些家庭或者饭前饮鸡尾酒 ,或者边吃饭边饮葡萄酒 ,并且(或者)饮餐后酒。

3 “祈使句 + and + 另一分句”相当于含有一个 if 条件句的主从复合句。

14) Come early and you will see him.

(如果)早点来 ,你就会见到他。

Cf If you come early , you will see him.

15) Do it at once and you will succeed.

(如果)马上干 ,你就能成功。

Cf If you do it at once , you will succeed.

16) Send in a request to see a high-level Chinese official and you may be rejected in one of three ways—all polite. ( George W. Bush : Looking Forward )

如果申请见某位中国的高级官员的话 ,你可能会被拒绝 ,有三种拒绝你的方式 ,每一种都很客气。

17) Give us the tools , and we will finish the job.

(如果)给我们工具 ,我们就能完成这项工作。

**【注意】**

A. 这种结构在强调简洁的谚语中特别多见。

a. Give one enough rope and he will hang himself. ( A proverb )

任其放纵必自取灭亡。



- b. Spare the rod and spoil the child. (A proverb)  
省了棒子 ,害了孩子。
- c. Give knaves an inch and they will take a yard. (A proverb)  
予坏人一寸 ,对方会取一码。
- d. Sow the wind and reap the whirlwind. (A proverb)  
种风得旋风 ,恶有恶报。
- e. You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours. (A proverb)  
你替我抓背 ,我也替你抓背 相互捧场。
- f. Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves. (A proverb)  
如你节约便士 ,英镑自然会累积起来。
- g. Talk of the devil and he is sure to appear. (A proverb)  
说鬼鬼到。 /说曹操曹操到。
- h. Laugh and the world laughs with you , weep and you weep alone. (A proverb)  
笑则举世跟你同笑 ,哭则你一个独哭。
- i. Plant melons and you get melons , sow beans and you get beans. (A proverb)  
种瓜得瓜 种豆得豆。
- B. 在这种结构中 and 有时也可以省略。在英国谚语中也可以找到一些这样的例子。

- a. Do it at once , ( and )you will never regret.  
如果马上就干 ,你便永远不会后悔。
- b. Go and see for yourself , ( and )you ll believe it.  
你去看看就会相信的。
- c. Waste not , want not. ( A proverb )  
不浪费 ,不匮乏。
- d. Grasp all , lose all. ( A proverb )  
样样都要 ,全数失掉。
- 4 “祈使句 + or + 另一分句 ”相当于一个含有 unless 否定条件的主从复合句。
- 18 )Come early , or you will not see him.  
早点来 ,不然你就见不到他了。  
Cf :Unless you come early , you will not see him.  
除非早点来 ,不然你就见不到他。
- 19 )Do it at once , or you will not succeed.  
马上干 ,不然你就不可能成功。  
Cf :Unless you do it at once , you will not succeed.  
除非马上干 ,否则你不会成功。
- 20 )Attend all the lectures and read the prescribed books , or you ll be in trouble at the exam.  
每次上课都得来 ,还要读指定的书 ,不然的话 ,考试就会有麻烦。
- 21 )Make haste , or else you will be late.  
快点 ,不然就来不及了。  
(Or 与 else 连用有强调的意味。)

22) Do not make yourself a mouse , or the cat will eat you. ( A proverb )

不要把自己变成老鼠 ,否则猫会吃你。

5 “名词短语 + and 或 or + 另一分句”具有类似功能 ,其中 and 与 or 的作用也刚好相反。通常 ,由并列连词连接的两部分在语法上应当是对等的 ,如同为名词或同为短语 ,而此处一边是词组 ,另一边却是分句。当然 ,我们也可以把 and 或 or 前边的词组看作一个省略了动词的祈使句。

23) One step forward and you ll be a dead man.

再往前跨一步 ,你就死定了。

Cf If you take one step forward , you ll be a dead man.

如果你往前跨一步 ,就死定了。

(前者显然更简洁有力。)

24) “Hands up or I ll shoot you !” he threatened.

“举起手来 ,要不我就开枪打死你 !”他威胁说。

Cf If you do not put your hands up , I ll shoot you.

Unless you put your hands up , I won t shoot you.

如果你不把手举起来 ,我就开枪打死你。

6 可以替换 or else 的另一个连词或连接副词是 otherwise.

25) Work hard , other wise you ll be sorry.

努力工作 ,否则你会后悔的。

26) I ran all the way to the class , other wise I d have been late.

我一路跑着到了教室 ,不然的话就迟到了。

## 21 Or so ,Or no 与 Or something

1 Or so 表示“大约 ,.....左右”。

1)It will take a week or so to fulfil the task.

要完成这项任务需要一个星期左右的时间。

2)To launch such a spacecraft into outer space will cost  
nine hundred million yuan or so.

发射这样一个飞行器到外太空将花费 9 亿元左右。

2 Or so 中的 so 也可以代表前边提到的某件事。Or so 意为  
“至少如此”。

3)That method put the teacher of English in a very diffi-  
cult position ,or so it has seemed to me.

那种方法使英语教师处于一个非常困难的境地 ,至少在我看来是这样。

4)There is no physical punishment in the prison ,or so we  
were told.

监狱里没有体罚 ,至少我们是这么听说的。

5)There was nothing more he wanted ,or so he thought.

再也没有什么东西是他需要的了 ,至少他是这么想的。

6)Yang Yi has got a job ,or so she tells me.

杨溢找到了一份工作 ,至少她是这么对我说的。

3 Or no 与 or not 用以说明两种截然不同的情况 ,但结果却不  
因情况不同而有所不同 ,因此具有“让步”的意味。

7)Oil or no oil ,Iraq has troubles.

不管有油没油 ,伊拉克都碰到了麻烦。

8) Chairman or no , if I want to stop the project , I can.

不管是不是主席 , 如果我想停止这项工程的话 , 我都能办到。

9) Rain or no rain , the sports meeting won't be postponed anymore.

不管下不下雨 , 运动会都不会再延期了。

Cf : Rain or shine , the sports meeting won't be postponed anymore.

不管是天晴还是下雨 , 运动会都不会再延期了。

(意思基本相同 , 但句中的 rain 与 shine 都是动词 , 而例 9 中的 rain 与例 7 , 例 8 中的 oil , chairman 一样都是名词。)

10) Old-fashioned or not , the shoes are very good.

不管式样老不老 , 这鞋挺不错的。

(Old-fashioned 为形容词 , 故后接 or not , 而不能接 no. )

4 Or something , or somebody , or somewhere 等表示“或什么的 , 或谁 , 或什么地方”等意思。

11) He is sick or something.

他是病了还是怎么的。

12) I left my mobile phone on the desk or somewhere.

我将手机放在桌上或是什么地方了。

13) I have given it to your secretary or somebody.

我已将它交给你的秘书或其他什么人了。

14) Why , what's wrong ? They aren't bad or anything like that , are they ?

哇 , 有什么问题吗 ? 它们没有变质或是有什么类似的问题吧 ?

## 22 Either... or ,Neither... nor 与 Nor

1 Either... or 与 neither... nor 同为关联连词 ,但意思刚好相反。

1)The poor woman cannot either read or write.

这个可怜的女人既不能读也不能写。

2)The poor woman can neither read nor write.

(意思同上。)

2 Either... or 或 neither... nor 出现在主语部分时 ,谓语动词

在人称和数上只与 or 或 nor 后的那个名词或代词保持一致。

3)Either you or he is wrong.

要么是你错了要么是他错了。

4)Neither you nor I am wrong.

你没错我也没错。

5)Neither Olivia nor the boys eat mushrooms.

奥利维亚不吃蘑菇 ,孩子们也不吃蘑菇。

6)Neither the boys nor Olivia eats mushrooms.

孩子们不吃蘑菇 ,奥利维亚也不吃蘑菇。

7)Either one rat or several mice are eating everything in the cupboard.

柜中的东西要么是一只老鼠在啃要么是几只老鼠在啃。

8)Either several mice or one rat is eating everything in the cupboard.

柜中的东西要么是几只老鼠在啃要么是一只老鼠在啃。

【注意】

口语中 ,有时也有将 neither... nor 视为复数的例子。

a. Neither he nor his wife have arrived. (非正式语体)

他和他的妻子都没到。

Cf: Neither he nor his wife has arrived. (正式语体)

**3** Either... or 与 neither... nor 所连接的两个部分既可以是语法地位相同的两个词,也可以是两个分句。

9) Either the manager has received the letter or his assistants have.

这封信要么是经理收到了要么是他的助手们收到了。

(Or 分句中承前省略了 received the letter.)

10) Either you deal with what is the reality, or you can be sure that the reality is going to deal with you. (Alex Halley)

要么你去应对现实,要么你肯定会被现实所捉弄。

**4** 与单个的 or 相比, either... or 的选择性更强一些, or 多用于选择性较弱的会话体。

11) Does she know English or Japanese?

她懂英语或日语吗?

12) Does she know either English or Japanese?

英语或日语她是否懂一门?

13) Answer (either) yes or no!

回答是还是不是!

**5** 在含有 either... or 或 neither... nor 的句子中偶尔也能出现两种以上的选择。

14) You can have either cola, orange juice or yogurt.

你可选择可乐、橙汁或酸奶中的任何一种。

15) Neither you , nor I , nor anyone else knows the answer.

你不知道 我不知道 ,也没有任何人知道这个答案。

(在第三种选择的前边加了一个 nor ,此时的谓语动词与第二个 nor 后的 anyone 保持人称和数的一致。)

16) Neither Tom nor John nor I have heard from him since he left.

自他走了以后 无论是汤姆、约翰还是我都没有他的任何音讯。

17) She had neither beauty , genius , accomplishment , nor manner.

她既没有姿色、天份和才艺 ,也没有风度。

(这里的选项有四个 ,但并没有像前两例那样重复 nor. )

6 Nor 除了和 neither 组成关联连词外也可以和 not ,no ,never 等否定词连用 ,通常表示“……也不……”的意思。

18) Not a car nor even a bike could pass the narrow alley.

这条窄巷别说小汽车过不去 ,就连自行车也过不去。

19) No money did he have nor any chance to get it.

他没有钱 ,也没有弄到钱的机会。

20) We never saw her again , nor did I hear from her.

我们再也没有见到过她 ,我也没有收到过她的来信。

21) The job cannot be done by you , nor ( by ) me , nor ( by ) anyone else.

这个工作你干不了 ,我干不了 ,任何人也干不了。



## 以 So 为代表的并列连词

### 23 So ,Hence 与 Thus

1 So 通常用作副词 ,有时也用作连词 ,表示“ 所以 ,那么 ”等意思。与其他表示因果关系的连词或起连接作用的副词相比 ,so 更口语化一些。

1) I've packed you a little food so you won't get hungry.

我给你包了一点吃的 ,这样你就不会挨饿了。

2) I had broken my glasses , so I couldn't see what was happening.

我把眼镜摔坏了 ,因此没能看见发生了什么事。

3) I had a headache , so I went to bed earlier than usual.

我头痛 ,所以比平常睡得早了一些。

2 Hence 是具有连接功能、表示因果关系的副词 ,属正式用语 ,常译为“ 因此 ,所以 ”等。

4) This work will cost over one million pounds , which is more than we can afford ; hence , we cannot do it at this time.

这项工作将耗资一百多万英镑 ,这不是我们所能承受的 ,因此 ,现在不能干。

5) The work is well done , hence they deserve commending.

工作做得很出色 ,因此他们值得表扬。

6) The violent emotions aroused by the horrible crime make it impossible to find a local jury of people who have not made up their minds against the defendants. Hence , it is probable that the trial will be held in another area.

由这可怕的罪行所激发出来的强烈情感使在当地组建陪审团已不可能 ,因为人们对被告已有一定的看法。因此 ,很可能审判会在另一个地方举行。

(Hence 出现在后一个句子的开头 ,但结合前后两句的意思看 ,该副词与位于句首的 and 一样 ,仍起连接作用。)

**3** Thus 是表示因果关系、具有连接功能的副词 ,也是本组中最正式的用语。

7) We have plenty of money and workers ; thus we can hope to do more next year.

我们有足够的资金与人工 ,因此 ,来年我们有希望取得更多的业绩。

8) Children have neither a past nor a future , thus they enjoy the present , which seldom happens to us. (Jean de la Bruyere )

孩子们既没有过去也没有将来 ,因此他们才能享受现在 ,这种情况很少在我们身上发生。

9) There has been no rain. Thus , the crops are likely to suffer.

一直没下雨 ,因此农作物可能受害。

(此处的 thus 虽位于第二个短句的开头 ,但与例 6 中的

hence 一样 ,仍起连接作用。)

## 24 Accordingly ,Consequently 与 Therefore

1 Accordingly 通常用作副词 ,意为“ 因此 ,因而 ,所以 ,结果 ”等 ,有时也具有连接的功能。

1)He was asked to go , accordingly he left at once.

他被要求离开 ,于是他马上便离开了。

2)They are of the same age and have the same educational background , accordingly they should have the same future.

他们年龄相同 ,教育背景也一样 ,因此 ,应有同样的前途。

3)The workforce have recently been calling for their working hours to be reduced , accordingly many companies have switched to a five-day week.

劳方近来一直要求削减他们的工作时间 ,许多公司因此已改为五天工作制。

(在 accordingly 的前边可以加连词 and。但加了 and 后 , accordingly 就只有副词的功能了。)

2 Consequently 是具有连接功能、表示因果关系的副词 ,属正式用语。

4)They cannot do the work ; consequently , we must find another company.

他们干不了这项工作 ,因此 我们必须找另一家公司。

5)The miner lost two legs in the accident ; consequently

he spent the rest of his life in the armchair.

这位矿工在一次事故中失去了双脚,因此只能在轮椅上度过他的余生。

- 6) Man is always more than he can know of himself ; consequently , his accomplishments , time and again , will come as a surprise to him. ( Henry Wordsworth Longfellow )

人类的作为往往会超出他们对自己的认识,因此,他们的成就便会一再令他们自己吃惊。

- 3) Therefore 与 accordingly 意思相同,也属于具有连接功能的副词,与 so 相比,therefore 更为正式。

- 7) She has left for Beijing ; therefore her husband asked me to look after their baby for a few days.

她去了北京,因此她丈夫要我给他们看几天孩子。

- 8) He worked day and night , therefore he was able to buy the sports car.

他日夜工作,所以有能力买那辆跑车。

Cf He worked day and night and therefore he was able to buy the sports car.

(意思同上,但 therefore 前加 and 后便失去了连接的功能,而只起副词的作用了。)

- 9) I think therefore I am. ( Rene Descartes )

我思故我在。

[这是法国哲学家笛卡儿(1596—1650)的名言。]

## 从属连词与原因状语从句

### 25 For 与 Because

1 For 是并列连词中唯一一个表示原因的连词。与 because 从句不同,for 分句给出的理由只能是推测性的,不能是造成某一事实或结果的直接原因,即自然真实的原因。

1) It will rain, for the barometer is falling.

天要下雨了,气压计的读数在下降。

(“气压计的读数下降”不是下雨的直接原因,而是得出会下雨这一结论的依据。)

2) It must have rained last night, for the ground is still wet.

昨晚一定下过雨的,因为地上还是湿的。

(“地上还是湿的”这是做出“昨晚一定下过雨的”这一推断的理由。)

3) The oil must be out, for the light went out.

油一定干了,因为灯熄了。

Cf: The light went out, because the oil was out.

灯熄了,因为油干了。

(“油干了”是导致“灯熄”的直接原因,因此此处只能用 because,而不能像例 3 那样用并列连词 for。)

4) He must have passed this way, for here are some footprints.

他一定是从这条路过去的,因为这里有脚印。

(“脚印”只是推测性的理由。)

Cf: He must have passed this way, because there is no other road.

他想必是从这条路过去的,因为再无别的路可走。

(此处虽仍是一种推断,但理由却是必然的,故用 because.)

- 5) Never completely encircle your enemy. Leave him some escape, for he will fight even more desperately if trapped. (Alex Halley)

决不要将你的敌人整个包围起来。给他留些生路,因为被围困起来后,他会更疯狂地拼斗。

- 2 由 For 引出的分句只能出现在句子的后边,而 because 引出的原因状语从句既可出现在句子的开头也可出现在句子的末尾,但倾向于末尾,即主句的后边。

- 6) He didn't feel afraid, for he was a brave man.

他不感到害怕,因为他是一个勇敢的人。

Cf: He didn't feel afraid, because he was a brave man.

(或) Because he was a brave man, he didn't feel afraid.

他不感到害怕,因为他是一个勇敢的人。

- 7) The blind men thought that by touching him they could learn just what kind of animal he was. For, you see, they trusted their own sense of touch very much.

这些盲人以为,只要摸一下他们就能知道那是什么动物。因为,你知道,他们对自己的感觉器官是笃信无疑的。

(这里的 for 引出的是一个独立的句子 ,而不是一个分句。尽管 for 出现在句子的开头 ,但结合前一个句子的内容看 ,仍然是“果”在前,“因”在后。)

- 8) After weeks of hardship and struggle they got to the summit , only to find that someone else had been there before. For when they came out at last upon the top they found an ax standing there. (James Ramsey Ulman : Top Man )

经过了数个星期的艰苦奋斗他们终于爬上了山顶 ,结果发现 ,已经有人捷足先登了。因为就在他们登上山顶的时候 ,他们发现了竖在那里的那把斧子。

- 9) The Emperor sent Napoleon a letter asking for negotiations , but he received no reply.

For Napoleon wanted to occupy Vienna first. (Anthony Corley : The True Story of Napoleon )

皇帝给拿破仑送去一封信要求谈判 ,但他没有收到拿破仑的回复。

因为拿破仑想先占领维也纳。

(这里 ,for 不仅独立成句 ,而且另起一段了。)

- 10) Perhaps these comets that never return have broken into pieces. For some astronomers think that shooting stars are pieces of broken comets.

也许这些永远不再归来的彗星已经破成了碎片 ,(因为)有些天文学家认为流星实际上就是彗星的残片。

**3** For 是比较正式的用语 ,很少出现在会话体中 ,会话中表示因果关系常用 so。

11) He was a brave man ,so he didn't feel afraid.

他是一个勇敢的人 ,所以不感到害怕。(会话体)

Cf :He didn't feel afraid ,for he was a brave man.

**4** 回答由 Why 引出的问题 ,只能用 because 引导的从句 ,而不能用 for 引导的分句。

12) Why was she absent yesterday ?

(She was absent )Because her son was ill.

她昨天为什么没来 ?

(她没来)因为她儿子病了。

**5** Because 从句可以有 not 等修饰语 ,而由 for 引出的分句却不能有任何修饰成分。

13) He stole ,not because he wanted the money ,but because he liked stealing.

他偷东西不是因为没钱 ,而是因为他喜欢偷。

14) We love life ,not because we are used to living but because we are used to loving. (Friedrich Nietzsche)

我们热爱生活并非因为我们习惯于生活 ,而是因为我们习惯于爱。

15) If one misses a chance ,it is not because the chance does not appear ,but because he can not predict its coming ,and when it really appears ,he does not grasp it.



如果有人错过机会,多半不是因为机会没来,而是因为他无法预见机会的到来,因此,就在机会真的光顾时,抓不住它。

【注意】

A. 当主句中出现否定词 not 时,它既可否定主句的内容,也可否定 because 从句的内容,在没有上下文可供参考的情况下,这种模棱两可的情况就会导致歧义或误解。

a. I didn't talk because my wife told me.

我没讲话,因为我妻子要我别讲话。

(或)我不是因为妻子要我讲话才讲话的。

(如欲明确地表示前一种意思,可在 because 从句前加一个逗号或加上适当的词语:I didn't talk, because my wife told me 或 I didn't talk because my wife told me not to do so. 如欲表示后一种意思,可将否定词放在 because 从句前或添加适当的词语:I talked not because my wife told me 或 I talked, but not because my wife told me to do so. )

b. She isn't coming because her baby is ill.

她因孩子生病不来了。

(或)她还会来的,不会因为孩子生病了(就不来)。

(如欲明确地表示前一种意思,可在从句前加逗号或改变原来的语序:She isn't coming, because her baby is ill 或 Because her baby is ill, she isn't coming 如欲表示后一种意思而不产生歧义,可将 not 置于从句前或换用表示转折关系的连词:She is coming, not because her baby is

ill 或 She is coming , though her baby is ill. )

- c. The mountain is not valuable because it is high.

山不是以高为贵的。

(此句如译为“山并不可贵 ,因为它高”便不合常理。)

- 6 Because 从句虽是全句的语义重心 ,但还可以通过强调句型加以强调 ,而由 for 引出的分句既不是语义重心 ,也不能通过强调句型得到强调。

- 16) It is because he likes English that he studies it so well.

正因为他喜欢英语 ,所以他的英语才学得那么好。

Cf He studies English so well because he likes it.

(由于对 for 的运用有以上种种限制 ,使用 because 的时候便远远多于使用 for 的时候。)

**【注意】**

- B. 当主语为 the reason 时 ,不能以 because 从句充当表语 ,而要以 that 引导的名词性从句充当表语。

- d. Probably the reason was simply that the cable was still not strong enough to bear the pressure of the sea for longer than a few weeks.

也许仅仅是因为电缆还不够结实以致于无法承受海水的压力达几周之久。

- C. 就像同样表示转折的从属连词(al) though 与并列连词 but 不能连用一样 ,从属连词 because 与并列连词 so 也不能连用。

## 26 Since 与 As

和 because 一样 ,since 与 as 也能引导原因状语从句。但三者使用的范围各不相同。

1) Because 从句给出的信息往往是对方不知道的 ,因此 ,它虽为从句 ,却是谈话的重心 ,而 since 从句给出的理由则是谈话双方都知道的 ,它被提及只是为了支持后边的推断。since 从句通常出现在句首 ,常被译作“既然”。和 for 引出的分句一样 ,since 从句在口语里也较少使用。

1) Since new developments are the products of a creative mind , we must therefore stimulate and encourage that type of mind in every possible way. (George Washington Carver)

既然新的开发都是创造性头脑的产物 ,我们就应该以一切可能的方式促成鼓励这种头脑的产生。

2) Since time is the one immaterial object which we cannot influence—neither speed up nor slow down , add to nor diminish—it is an imponderably valuable gift. (Maya Angelou)

既然时间是我们无法施加任何影响的非物质的一种东西 ,我们既不可以令其提速 ,也不能让其减速 ,既不可能让其增加 ,也无法使之减少 ,它便是一种价值无法估量的贵重礼物。

3) Since we live near the sea , we enjoy a healthy climate.

因为住处靠近大海 ,我们可以享受一种健康的气候。

2) As 从句表示的原因较 since 从句更弱一些。它似乎只是顺便提到的原因而已,但 as 从句在句子里的位置比 since 从句灵活,它可以在句首,也可以在句中。口语里 as 常可省略。

4) As I'm tired, let's take a rest.

我累了,让我们歇一会儿。

(“我累了”显然是要求歇一会儿的理由,汉译时根据意合法省略了“因为”二字。因 as 从句只是顺便提到的原因,口语中便可以省略成:Let's take a rest. I'm tired.)

5) As Jane was the eldest, she looked after the others.

因为珍妮是老大,她负责照看其他几个。

6) You cannot take this kind of job, as you suffer from hepatitis B.

你不能从事这项工作,因为你患有乙型肝炎。

3) 在 since 引导的原因状语从句中,主语与动词 be 有时可能被省略,从而出现 since 后紧跟形容词的情况。

7) It is a meaningless, since impossible, proposal.

既然通不过,这个提议就没有什么意义了。

(在 since impossible 中省略了 it is,原句应为:since it is impossible.)

8) He is a more dangerous, since unknown, foe.

他是一个尚未暴露的敌人,因此就更危险了。

(Since unknown = since he is unknown)

## 27 Seeing that Seeing as 与 Considering that

1 Seeing (that) 与 seeing as 表示原因,常译作“鉴于,由于,既然,因为”等。Seeing that 后边的 that 像引导宾语从句的 that 一样可以省略。与 since 相同,seeing that 与 seeing as 给出的原因也是已知的事实。口语中 seeing that, seeing as 与 considering that 多由 as 取代。

1) Seeing (that) he's ill, he's unlikely to come.

他病了,不太可能来。

2) Seeing that a Pilot steers the ship in which we sail, who will never allow us to perish even in the midst of shipwrecks, there is no reason why our minds should be overwhelmed with fear and overcome with weariness.

(John Calvin)

既然是一位甚至在船只失事时也决不会让我们淹死的水手在驾驶我们乘坐的航船,我们便没有任何理由被恐惧所压倒,并因此被弄得疲惫不堪。

3) Seeing that you have come, you may as well stay here for a few days.

你既然已经来了,完全可以在这里呆上几天。

4) Seeing as Mr. Smith is a doctor, I would assume he has a modicum of intelligence.

既然史密斯先生是一位医生,我倒愿意相信他有那么一点智力。

2 Considering that 与 seeing that 一样,都是由动词演变而来

的连词。Consider 意为“考虑”, considering that 常译作“就……而论”,“照……来看”。

5) He did poorly in his examinations considering (that) he had studied hard for them.

他用心准备过, 就此而论, 他考得并不好。

6) Considering that he did not study, he did well in the test.

考虑到他没有用功, 他能考得这样就不错了。

7) Considering that foul language is in most movies and music that teens listen to, it doesn't surprise me if a girl swears.

污言秽语在影片与十来岁的孩子们听的音乐中都有, 考虑到这一点, 一个女孩子如果骂人的话, 我便不感到惊奇了。

## 28 Now that 与 Not that... but that

1 Now that 作为表示原因的从属连词, 常译作“既然, 由于”; 口语里可以省去 that.

1) Now that she is well again, she can go on with her writing.

现在身体既然已经恢复, 她便可以继续写作了。

2) Now that everyone has realized the importance of education, all the villagers are willing to send their children to school.

因为每个人对教育的重要性都有所认识, 村民们都愿意送孩

子上学了。

3) Now (that) John has come , we can begin.

既然约翰已经来了 ,我们可以开始了

4) The situation should ease up now that the two sides are prepared to talk.

既然双方都准备谈判 ,那么局势应该缓和了。

5) “ Yes , now that you mention , I believe I can smell fish ,” said Daphne.

达夫尼说道 ,“是的 ,既然你先提起这话 ,我想我是闻到鱼的气味了。”

2 Not that. . . but that 结构在否定一种解释的同时 ,对导致某一结果的原因作出了新的解释。这里的 but 不能译作“但”而要译作“而”。

6) Not that I dislike the task , but that I am unequal to it.

倒不是因为我不喜欢这项任务 ,而是因为我不来。

(不妨设想这种句子是在 The reason is not that I dislike the task , but that I am unequal to it 的基础上演变而来的。)

7) Our boast is not that we have more ideas or brilliant ideas but that our ideas are better tested.

我们之所以自豪不是因为我们主意多或者主意好 ,而是因为我们的主意经受过更好的考验。

8) Not that I am dissatisfied , but that I have my own business to attend to.

不是我不满意 ,而是因为我有自己的事要照管。

- 9) I played all the principal parts myself—not that I was a finer actor than the other boys , but that I owned the establishment.

所有的主要角色都是由我自己担任的 ,不是因为我比别的男孩演技高明 ,而是因为我是剧院的老板。

- 10) It s not that I love Caesar less , but that I love Rome more. ( Shakespeare : Julius Caesar )

不是我不爱凯撒 ,而是因为我更爱罗马。

- 11) She doesn t go out , but it is not that she hates people.  
她不爱出门 ,但不是因为她讨厌别人。

(在这个句子中 ,but that 部分被省略了 ,因此 ,导致“她不出门”的真实原因便不得而知。Not that 部分仅仅否定了一种解释而已。)

- 3** 某些形容词后边的 that 从句就内容而言似乎也可以归于原因状语从句的范畴。但也有语法学家将“be + afraid ,aware ,certain ,confident ,content 与 glad 等表示情感的形容词”后的 that 从句归入宾语从句。

- 12) Everyone is pleased that farmers should receive loans from the government.

农民能得到政府的贷款 ,每个人都很高兴。

(由 that 引出的从句说明“每个人高兴”的理由。)

- 13) We are very glad that he has finally got a chance to visit Paris.



他终于有机会去看看巴黎了,我们很高兴。

## 29 In that ,Only that ,Inasmuch as 与 Insomuch as

1 In that 引导原因状语从句,可译为“因为,在于,由于”等,多见于书面语。

1) This is an ideal site for the factory in that it is close to the sources of supply of the raw materials.

这是一个理想的厂址,因为它靠近各种原材料的供应处。

2) Rubber differs from synthetic plastics only in that it is produced naturally and not in the laboratory.

橡胶与合成塑料的差别只在于前者是自然生长的,而不是在实验室中生产的。

3) The new bridge is likely to prove very useful in that it will provide a direct route to the north.

这座新桥有可能被证明是很有用的,因为它将提供一个直接通往北方的道路。

4) Criticism is necessary in that it helps us to correct our mistakes.

批评之必要就在于它能帮助我们改正错误。

2 Only that 相当于 but that,常译作“要不是……”。口语中,that 常省略。此外,主句虽用虚拟式,从句仍用直陈式。

5) Only (that) I have a meeting, I would come to the party.

若不是要开会,我会参加聚会的。

6) I would have bought the apartment , only ( that ) it was expensive.

要不是价钱太高 我本来要买下这套公寓的。

7) I would go with you , only that I am too busy.

要不是太忙 我会和你一道去的。

3) Inasmuch as 与 insomuch as 属书面用语 ,二者均可译作“因为 ,由于”。

8) Inasmuch as we serve the people , we are not afraid to have our shortcomings pointed out.

因为我们是为人民服务的 ,所以不怕别人指出我们的缺点。

9) He was really a most unusual astronomer inasmuch as he was deaf mute.

考虑到他又聋又哑这一点 ,他确是位极不寻常的天文学家。

10) The reciprocating pump is superior to the rotary pump insomuch as it is more efficient.

往复泵比回转泵优越 因为前者效率高。

11) I m ready to accept your proposal inasmuch as I believe it to be the best you can offer.

我准备接受你的建议 ,因为我想这是你能提供的最好的东西了。

12) This dilemma is compounded insomuch as most state-owned enterprises have liabilities.

这种两难的困境因多数国有企业都负有债务而更为严重。

## 从属连词与结果状语从句

### **30 So... that So that 与 Such... that Such that**

1 So 加形容词或副词表示程度,后紧接 that 从句表示结果。常译作“太……以致……”。

1) This book is so boring that few people can finish reading it.

这本书太枯燥了,几乎没有几个人能够读完它。

(Boring 为形容词。)

2) This time the caller spoke so softly that he had to cover his other ear to block out the highway sounds.

(Mary H. Clark : A Stranger Is Watching)

这一次打电话来的人说话的声音很低,他不得不掩住另一只耳朵以阻挡来自公路的噪声。

(Softly 为副词。)

3) In some places the fire came so suddenly that farmers at work were unable to save their wives and children. (Richard Musman : Bush Fire)

有些地方大火来得如此突然以致于正在干活的农民都来不及营救自己的妻子女儿。

4) His best subject was English ; he was so good at writing that his headmaster advised him to earn his living as a newspaper reporter.

他学得最好的一门课是英文。他的写作能力很不错,以致于校长都建议他去当记者。

- 5) So many people came to the party that we ran out of liquor.

参加聚会的人如此之多,结果酒都喝光了。

(与前边几个例句的区别在于,这里的 so many 修饰充当主语的名词 people,而前边几例中的 so 修饰充当表语的形容词或充当状语的副词。)

- 6) We had already lived through so much that night, we thought nothing could frighten us any more. ( Elie Wiesel : Night )

那天晚上已经经历了那么多的事,我们想再也没有什么东西会令我们害怕了。

(前者是“因”,后者是果。只是在应该使用 that 的地方,前者没有用 that 而以一个逗号取代了它。)

- 7) The Dakins moved in so quietly it was some days before I knew they were in the house. ( V. S. Naipaul : The Perfect Tenants )

达金斯一家悄无声息地就搬了进来,以致于过了几天我才发现他们已经住在这幢房子里了。

(该句省略了引导结果从句的 that. )

- 8) There lay a young man, fast asleep—sleeping so soundly, so deeply, that he was far, far away from them both. ( Katherine Mansfield : The Garden Party )

一位年轻人就躺在那儿,他睡得那么熟,那么沉,他离她俩非常遥远。

(本句在 that 从句前有两个 so 短语,呈并列状态。)

- 2) Such... that 的用法与 so... that 相似,但 such 后应接名词短语。Such 表程度,that 从句表示结果,常译作“非常地……以致于……到……的地步”。口语中 that 有时可以省略。

- 9) It was such a cold day that people were able to drive their cars on the frozen lake.

这一天非常冷,人们可以在冻结的湖面上开车了。

Cf: It was so cold a day that people were able to drive their cars on the frozen lake.

(意思同上。)

- 10) The Japanese soldiers were seized with such a panic that they fled in great disorder.

这些日本士兵如此恐慌以致溃不成军。

- 11) Astronomers tell us that the stars in the Milky Way are scattered in such a way that the group would appear in space like a great disk.

天文学家告诉我们,银河系的星星在宇宙中的散布情况使它们作为一个整体看上去就像一个大盘子。

- 12) A few boas grow to such a length that they can tackle creatures as big as goats.

有少数蟒蛇长得很长,它们可以对付像山羊那样大小的动物。

13) It was such a hot day (that) we had to use the air-conditioners again.

天气如此炎热,我们不得不重新启用空调。

(Such 修饰名词短语 a hot day, 而引导结果状语从句的 that 已被省略。)

3) So that 也可直接引导一个从句表示结果。口语在 so that 从句前可稍作停顿,文字在从句前可有逗号。

14) We hurried so that we did not miss the last bus.

我们加快了步伐,结果赶上了最后一班车。

15) I was caught in a shower, so that all my clothes got wet.

我碰上阵雨,所有的衣服都淋透了。

4) Such that 也有与 so that 类似的用法,常译作“因为非常……以致于”。Such 根据所导致的结果可译为相应的形容词或副词。

16) The shock was such that she was almost driven mad.

这个打击太大,她几乎要发疯了。

Cf It was such a shock that she was almost driven mad.

It was so shocking that she was almost driven mad.

17) The performance was such that the audience were deeply moved.

表演如此精彩,观众们被深深地打动了。

18) Such was the force of the eruption that the whole

town was covered with ashes.

火山喷发的力量是如此之强,以致于整个城镇都被火山灰淹没了。

(主句部分因以 such 开头而引起了倒装。)

- 5 在正式的文体中,可将 so... that 与 such... that 中的 so 与 such 放在句首以加强语势。此时应采用倒装结构。

19) So frightened were the Japanese soldiers that they ran for their lives at the sight of the Chinese troops.

这些日本士兵是如此害怕,他们一见到中国军队就慌忙逃命去了。

20) So strange was his appearance that no one recognized him.

他的外表看上去如此陌生,以致于无人能认出他来。

21) So rapid is the rate of progress that advance seems to be following advance on almost a monthly basis.

发展的速度是如此之快,以致于看上去几乎每个月都在进步。

22) To such lengths did she go in rehearsal that two actors walked out.

排演中她竟如此不遗余力以致于两个男演员都中途退出以示抗议。

(倒装时借用了助动词 did.)

- 6 在正式的语体中,偶尔也可以单用 that 引导结果状语从句。

23) She must have been greatly insulted that she cried so sadly.

她一定受到了严重的冒犯才哭得那么伤心。

24) Your son is not a child that you should use the rod.

你的儿子不是小孩子了,你不该拿棍子打他。

25) I'm not a woman that I should worry about such trifles.

我不是女人,我不会为这样的小事犯愁的。

26) What have I done that they should cut me?

我到底做了什么,他们竟不理我了?

7 So much so that 意为“到如此程度以致于”。由它引出的从句常接在某个判断之后以说明该判断的真实程度。

27) He longed to visit Beijing, so much so that he dreamed about it.

他如此渴望去北京,连做梦都想去。

28) She is ill—so much so that she can't get out of bed.

她病了,病得很重以致于卧床不起。

29) He himself believed in freedom, so much so that he would rather die than live without it.

他本人笃信自由,与其不自由地活着他宁愿死去。

8 如果将 with the result that 后边的从句作为 result 的同位语看待的话,由 that 引出的从句为同位语从句,如果将 with the result that 看作一个整体,其作用便与一个短语连词相当。由它引出的从句就是结果状语从句了。



30) They missed the train , with the result that they were late for work.

他们没赶上火车 结果上班都迟到了。

31) I was in the bath , with the result that I didn't hear his knocking at the door.

我在洗澡 结果没听到他敲门。

**【注意】**

So that ,such that 除了引导结果状语从句外 ,还可引导目的状语从句 ,而 so . . . that 与 such . . . that 结构却只能引导结果状语从句。

### **31 To such a degree that 与 To such an extent that**

1 表示程度的状语从句也可以由含有“程度”一词的短语来引导 ,如 to such a degree that ,to such an extent that.

1) He was tired to such a degree that he fainted.

他疲惫得昏了过去。

2) He was mad to such an extent that he beat his father.

他竟然疯到了连自己的父亲也打的程度。

3) Under the program , individuals or families whose residences were destroyed or damaged to such an extent that reconstruction is necessary are eligible for 100 percent financing.

根据这项规划 ,无论是个人还是家庭 ,其住所被摧毁或损坏到需要重建程度的都有资格获得百分之百的资助。

2) Insofar (也可拼为 in so far as)是副词,意为“到这个程度(或范围)”。Insofar as 起连词的作用,引导程度状语从句。

4) Insofar as I can see, they are all dissatisfied with the arrangement.

据我了解,他们都对这项安排不满意。

5) I'll help you in so far as I can.

我会在力所能及的范围内帮助你。

3) So (as) far as 除了表示“直到(远到)……为止(指实际距离)”或“到……程度、范围(借喻)”外,还可以引导程度状语从句,表示“就……而论”的意思。

6) The fire spread as far as the city proper.

火延烧到了市内。

(只有一套主谓结构,属简单句。)

7) He went so far as to disregard the labor discipline.

他竟然到了忽视劳动纪律的程度。

(仍为简单句。)

8) She is really ill, as far as I know.

就我所知,她真的病了。

(有两套主谓结构,该句属主从复合句。)

9) So far as our desire is concerned, we don't want to fight even for a single day.

就我们的愿望说,我们连一天也不愿意打。

10) So far as I could see, the retired teachers were all satisfied with the final decision.

在我看来,所有的退休教师都对最后的决定很满意。

11) As far as marketing is concerned , I think the best thing is to have a meeting with the Sales Manager and the advertising people.

就市场营销而论 ,我认为最好是与销售经理及从事广告工作的人员开个会。

4 According as 与 according to 不同 ,前者是从属连词 ,引导从句 ,后者是介词 ,通常只能接名词或相当于名词的词。前者意为“视……而定”或“依据……而……” ,后者常译作“根据……” ,“根据……所说” ,“随着……不同而不同”。今天 , according as 的使用 频率远不及 according to.

12) You may go or stay , according as you decide.

你可走可留 ,完全由你自己决定。

Cf :You may go or stay according to your decision.

(意思同上 ,但此句为简单句。)

13) You will be praised or blamed according as your work is good or bad.

对你的赏罚将由你工作的好坏来决定。

Cf :You will be praised or blamed according to your work.

对你的奖惩将依据你工作的情况而定。

(使用介词短语后 ,复合句变成了简单句。)

14) The plan will succeed or not according as it is judiciously managed or not.

计划是否成功要看处理的恰当与否而定。

【注意】

介词 according to 后有时也可以接由 how ,whether 等疑问词引导的宾语从句。

- a. They were praised or blamed according to how they had done their work.

依照(他们的)工作情况 他们或者受到表彰或者受到责备。

- b. A sound is different according to whether it is stressed or not.

一个音会因是否重读而有所不同。

## 从属连词与目的状语从句

### 32 That So that 与 In order that

1 That 作为从属连词,偶尔可单独引导目的状语从句。此用法可视为 so that 省略 so 而成,多见于书面语。

1) We hurried that we might not be late for the lecture.  
为了上课不会迟到,我们加快了步伐。

(此句中的 that 通常以 so that 或 in order that 代替。)

2) They have been training hard that they may win more gold medals in the 2008 Olympic Games.

他们一直在努力训练,为的是在 2008 年的奥林匹克运动会能赢得更多金牌。

3) We've made many bird houses, that our city may attract more birds.

我们搭建了很多鸟巢,为的是让我们的城市能吸引更多的鸟。

2 So that 与 in order that 结构表示目的都可译为“以便……,为使……”。与表示目的的动词不定式以及“in order to + 动词不定式”相比,in order that 引导的从句目的性最为明确,也最为正式。

4) She took a taxi so that she would be in time for the job interview.

为了准时参加工作面试,她坐了出租车。

Cf She took a taxi so that she was able to be in time for the job interview.

她坐了出租车,因此能及时赶上工作面试。(结果状语从句)

5) I'm going to make an early start so that I don't get stuck in the traffic.

我准备早点动身,以免堵车。

(此句中的从句部分用一般现在时表示将来时间,此处也可直接用一般将来时 I won't get stuck.)

6) Come closer in order that you may see the screen better.

靠近点,以便能更清楚地看清银幕。

(与 in order that 相似的短语有 in order to,后者接动词不定式表示目的。In order to 比单纯不定式表目的正式,而 in order that 则更为正式。)

7) He came in quietly in order that he shouldn't wake his wife.

他悄无声息地进来了,为的是不惊醒他的妻子。

8) So that he could be heard more clearly, the professor spoke through a microphone.

为了让大家都听得更清楚些,这位教授讲话时使用了扩音器。

Cf: The professor spoke through a microphone so that he could be heard more clearly.

(语序不同,意思相同。)

9) He depressed the "record" button on the cassette player

and turned his head so that his voice would be picked up clearly. (Mary H. Clark : A Stranger Is Watching)  
他按了录音机上的“录音”键,并把自己的头偏了过去,以便录得更清晰一些。

【注意】

在表示目的的 so that 结构中往往要用到 can ,may ,will , should ,would 等情态动词。这些情态动词的出现有助于区分从句的性质。在结构方面,表示目的的 so that 结构比较灵活,它既可出现在句末,也可出现在句首,而表示结果的 so that 结构却只能位于句末。尽管如此,个别情况下,so that 的这两种用途还是难以区分:

They handed him a microphone so that everyone present could hear his speech.

他们将扩音器递给了他,以便在场的每一个人都能听到他的讲话。

(So that everyone present could hear his speech 被视为目的状语从句。)

(或)他们将扩音器给了他,于是在场的每一个人都能听到他的讲话了。

(So that everyone present could hear his speech 被理解为结果状语从句。)

尽管从句中有情态动词 could,但全句为过去式,从句又位于句末,这便使结果与目的的分界不那么清楚了。为了避免歧义,不妨采用 in order that 或 with the result that 等更为明确的表达方式。

### 33 Lest ,In case (that)与 For fear (that)

That so that in order that 等引导的从句通常表示肯定的目的,也就是要达到的目标,而 lest in case that 与 for fear that 等引导的从句则表示负面目的,即要努力避免出现的情况。它们在句中常译作“为了……不发生;以免,以防”等。使用时应注意各连词对从句中动词形式的不同要求。

1 Lest 是正式用语,现已很少使用。在 lest 引导的从句中,谓语动词要以动词原形或 should 加动词原形的虚拟形式出现。

1) We must not promise what we ought not, lest we be called on to perform what we cannot. (Abraham Lincoln)

我们不应承诺我们不该承诺的东西,以免人家要求我们去做我们做不到的事。

2) The constitution is not an instrument for the government to restrain the people, it is an instrument for the people to restrain the government lest it come to dominate our lives and interests. (Patrick Henry)

宪法不是政府限制人民的工具,而是人民限制政府的工具,以免它支配人民的生活,妨害人民的利益。

3) He ran away lest he (should) be caught.

因为怕被抓,他跑掉了。

2 在英国英语中,非正式的场合可以用 in case (that) 代替 lest。在 in case 引导的从句中通常用一般现在时,如从句中



用虚拟语气,即 should 加动词原形,则表示出现的可能性较小,常译作“万一……”。

4) Take a taxi in case you are late for the meeting.

坐出租车去以免开会迟到。

5) Take your coat in case it rains.

带上外衣,以防下雨。

Cf: Take your coat just in case it should rain.

(意思略有不同, in case 前加修饰语 just, 后边再加 should rain 的虚拟形式有“万一下雨”的含义。)

6) I must stay at home this morning in case my father comes (should come) to see me.

今天早上我必须呆在家里,恐怕我父亲要来看我。

**3** For fear (that) 是本组连词中使用最普遍的一个,常用以代替略显陈旧的 lest 或受到地域限制的 in case that。从句中可用一般现在时,如主句为过去时,则从句内需用 should 或 would。

7) She hid her jewelry for fear (that) it would be stolen.

她把宝石藏了起来以免被人偷去。

8) Shut the window for fear (that) it may rain.

把窗户关上,恐怕会下雨。

9) He handled the instrument with care for fear (that) it should be damaged.

他摆弄那个仪器时非常小心,生怕损坏它。

10)The millionaire always took a bodyguard with him for fear (that)he should be attacked.

这个百万富翁总带着保镖 ,生怕遭人攻击。

## 从属连词与时间状语从句

### 34 When ,Whenever ,While 与 As

1 When 作为引导时间状语从句的连词 ,既可表示“一段”时间 ,也可表示时间“点” ,常译作“当……的时候 ;无论什么时候 ;一……的时候”。

1)When you wake up tomorrow morning I'll be in London.

明天早上你醒来时 ,我已经在伦敦了。

(When 从句中的 wake up 虽为一般现在时 ,但它表示的却是将来时间。)

2)I'll start when I'm ready.

准备好了我就开始。

(When 从句在这里既可以表示将来时间 ,也暗含条件的意味。)

3)When she ate seafood , she was (always) itching all over.

过去每次吃海产品 ,她都会浑身发痒。

(这里的 when 相当于 whenever ,表示过去的习惯性动作。)

4)When in trouble ,turn to the local policemen for help.

遇到麻烦时 ,请向当地的警察寻求帮助。

(在 when 或 while 引导的状语从句中 ,如果主语和主句的主语相同 ,而动词又是 be 的时候 ,从句中的主语及 be 动词常

- 被省略。该句中的 when 从句可还原为 :When you are in trouble. )
- 5) He hit the jackpot when the stock he invested in tripled in value in one day.  
当他投资的股票一天内涨了两倍时 ,他赚了一大笔钱。  
(Triple 意为增至原来的三倍 ,实际涨了两倍。)
- 2) Whenever 是 when 的强势形式 ,常译作“……的时候一定 ;每次……总是”。
- 6) Please come to see us whenever you are in trouble.  
不管何时碰到困难 ,请来见我们。
- 7) You can use my car whenever you like.  
你不管什么时候想用我的车都可以用。
- 8) Whenever you have an aim you must sacrifice something to attain it.  
一旦有了一个目标 ,你就要为实现它而作出某种牺牲。
- 3) While 表示“同时” ,由它引导的时间状语从句只能指时间段 ,不能指时间点 ,因为 while 的含义是 for as long as 或 during the time when.
- 9) I sat on the settee to unwrap the package while he stood by.  
我坐在长沙发上拆包裹时 ,他就站在旁边。  
(主句与从句中的两个动作发生在同一时间 ,延续时间也相同。汉译时主从关系颠倒了 ,但并不影响原句的意思。)
- 10) Strike while the iron is hot. (A proverb)

趁热打铁。

- 11) While John sat in the corner reading newspapers ,  
I was cooking lunch in the kitchen.

约翰坐在角落里读报时 ,我正在厨房里准备午餐。

(在表示同时发生的两个费时较长的动作时 ,通常用 while. )

- 4 As 引导的时间状语除了表示“正当……之时”外 ,还可以表示相随渐变的过程 ,含有“一边……一边”的意思。

- 12) As a young man , Jack London joined a socialist party.

年轻时 ,杰克·伦敦加入了一个社会主义政党。

(As a young man 意为 as he was a young man ,因从句与主句的主语指同一人 ,且从句中的动词为 be ,故可作相应的省略。)

- 13) He dropped the glass as he stood up.

他站起来时将杯子掉到了地上。

- 14) He dropped the glass as he was standing up.

当他站起来时 ,将杯子掉到了地上。

(尽管从句中使用了过去进行体 ,其功能与例 13 中的一般过去时似无多大区别。)

- 15) As I was crossing the street I noticed a police car.

我过街时看到了一辆警车。

(此句中的 as 可换成 when 或 while ,意思不变。Cross 是延续动词 ,而 notice 是瞬时动词。当主句与从句中的动作性质不同时 ,通常将延续动词放入从句 ,而将瞬时动词放入

主句。)

- 16) As he grew richer , he became more and more ambitious.

随着他变得越来越富 他的野心也越来越大。

(这种用法是 as 所特有的。)

- 17) The spaceshuttle exploded as it was landing.

太空船在着陆时爆炸了。

- 5) Whilst 主要用于英国英语 ,其意义、用法均与 while 相同。

- 18) They fell in love four years ago whilst working with the same company.

四年前在同一家公司工作时他们相爱了。

## 35 Before 与 After Since 与 Ever Since

- 1) Before 与 after ,一个表示“在……之前” ,一个表示“在……之后” 。除了充当连词外 ,两者均可充当介词与副词。

- 1) You must finish your homework before you go out to play.

你出去玩之前必须做完家庭作业。

Cf :You must finish your homework before going out to play.

(意思同上 ,但 before 属介词 ,going out to play 是介词宾语。)

- 2) I will phone you before I come.

来之前我会给你去电话。

(在 before 引导的时间状语从句中,将来时间是由一般现在时来表示的。)

- 3) I'll be back before you have left.

在你离开前,我会回来。

(从句中的现在完成体表示将来完成的事。实际上用一般现在时也无妨,因为 before 的词义已决定了主句与从句中两个动作的先后。)

- 4) I found your walkman after you had left the bedroom.

你离开寝室以后,我发现了你的随身听。

(因 after 就有“在……之后”之意,此处仅用一般过去时也能表达同样的意思。)

- 5) After I finished my job, I sat down to study French.

干完我的工作后,我便坐下来学法语。

(尽管“finish my job”在前,“study French”在后,从句中并没有用过去完成体。After 一词已经解决了两动作孰先孰后的问题。)

- 6) We are going after we have had dinner.

吃完晚餐后我们就走。

(从句中的现在完成时相当于将来完成时,此处也可用一般现在时 have dinner,使用现在完成时是为了强调完成。)

- 2 Since 表示从过去的某一时间为起点,持续到现在或到过去的某时候,常译作:“从……以来,自……时候到现在”。Since 从句中的动词通常用一般过去时,主句动词通常用现在完成时。但是也有 It is (was)... since 形式。Ever

since 是 since 的强调形式 ,它们之间的关系就像 when 与 whenever。与 after ,before 一样 ,since 也可以充当介词与副词。

7) We've been friends since we met at school.

自从在学校里结识以来 ,我们一直是朋友。

8) We've been friends ever since we were children.

甚至打从孩提时代起我们就是朋友了。

(We were children 应被理解为 our childhood. )

9) It is more than twenty years since China began its economical reform.

自中国实行经济改革以来已有二十多年的时间了。

(It is 也可改为 it has been ,但前者是更为正规的用法。)

10) He has written to me frequently since I was ill.

自我痊愈以来 ,他给我写信一直很频繁。

(Since 从句后的动词多为瞬时动词 ,而 I was ill 描述的则是一种持续的状态 ,当它出现在 since 后时 ,应被理解为这一状态的结束 ,即痊愈之时 ,故译作“自我痊愈以来” ,而不是“自我生病以来” 。如想表达“自生病以来”即现在还在病中这层意思 ,可用 since I have been ill 这一形式。)

11) Fortunately there's never been any trouble since I've been with her. ( Christie : Death on the Nile )

值得庆幸的是 ,自从我和她待在一块儿以来就再也没有出现过任何麻烦。

(Since 从句内用了现在完成体 I've been with her ,以强调两人一直待在一起的这种状态。)



### 【注意】

Since 从句既可表示时间,也可表示原因,因此,有时可能产生歧义。

Since her purse was stolen last Monday, she has been very sad.

自从上周一钱包被盗以来,她一直很伤心。

(Since her purse was stolen last Monday 被理解为时间状语从句。)

(或)因为上周一丢了钱包,所以她一直很伤心。

(Since her purse was stolen last Monday 被理解为原因状语从句。)

## 36 Till 与 Until

1) Till 与 until 既可用作介词也可用作连词,当表示动作或状态的延续时,通常译作“直到……之前”。Until 比 till 更为正式,因此,口语中 till 的出现频率会高出 until。Till 与 until 从句中多用瞬间动词,而主句中则多用延续动词。

1) I'll be here till he comes back tomorrow.

明天他回来之前我会一直待在这里。

(Be here 是一种可以延续的状态,而 comes back 却是瞬间完成的动作。从句中的 comes back 代表将来时间。)

2) He lived in New York till he died.

他在纽约一直住到去世。

(Live 可以延续,而 die 则是延续时间极短的瞬间动词。)

3) Wait here until I tell you to go.

呆在这里直到我叫你走为止。

4) She cried till her eyes dried.

她一直哭到眼泪干了为止。

**2** 当主句中的动词为瞬时动词时,主句要用否定式。此时, till 与 until 应译作“到……为止”或“直到……才”。Not... until (till) 与 Not... before 意思相同。

5) The little baby did not stop crying until it was fed.

那个婴儿直到填饱了肚子才停止了哭声。

(Stop 为瞬时动词,其肯定式不可能出现在主句中。)

6) They won't come home until it is dark.

不到天黑他们是不会回家的。

(Come 为瞬时动词,在 until 从句前当用否定式。从句中的一般现在时表示将来时间。)

7) He didn't give up smoking until he got lung cancer, but it was too late.

他直到患了肺癌才戒了烟,但已经太晚了。

(Give up 是瞬时动词,在 till 或 until 从句前当用否定形式。)

8) Don't get off the bus till it has stopped.

汽车未停下来之前不要下车。

(从句中用现在完成体 has stopped 代表将来完成体 will have stopped。此处也可以用一般现在时 stops,用完成体是为了强调下车一定得在车停稳之后。)

9) Don't cross the bridge until you come to it. ( A proverb )

不要杞人忧天。(英语原意是 在到桥边之前不要过桥。)

10) Never trouble trouble till trouble troubles you. ( A proverb )

在麻烦来找你之前 ,别去自找麻烦。

(主句中的否定是借助副词 never 实现的。)

11) People do not know the blessing of health till they lose it.

人们要等到失去健康的时候才会知道健康之可贵。

12) China had no part in this war until four months after the U. S. troops had invaded North Korea.

中国直到美国侵犯北朝鲜四个月之后才介入了这场战争。

**3** Until 因较 till 正式 ,故常被提到句首以加强语势。Till 一般不用在句首。

13) Until he comes , we cannot do anything.

在他到达之前 ,我们啥也干不了。

Cf :We cannot do anything until he comes.

(意思同上 ,但前者更具强调意味。)

14) Until he told me , I had no idea of it.

在他告诉我之前 ,我对此一无所知。

#### 【注意】

Till 与 until 只能引导时间状语从句 ,如欲表现“到某地为止” ,当用 as far as 或 to.

- a. We went as far as the edge of the forest.

我们一直走到了森林的边缘。

### 37 Instantly, Directly 与 Immediately

这三个以-ly 结尾的副词有时也用作从属连词,引导时间状语从句。其用法与 as soon as 相同,常译作“一……就”。它们有时也和 that 构成短语连词,表示相同的意思。

1 Instantly (that)是较正式的用语。

- 1)He called her instantly he came home.

他一回家就给她去电话。

- 2)I recognized her instantly I saw her.

我一见面就认出了她。

2 Directly 是 instantly 的同义语,但欠正式,多见于口语。

- 3)He made for the door directly he heard the knock.

他一听到敲门声就朝门走去。

- 4)I came directly I got your e-mail.

一接到你的电子邮件我就来了。

- 5)I recognized the place directly I saw it.

我一看到这个地方就认出来了。

3 Immediately 是英国英语的特有用法,多见于口语。

- 6)Immediately he came home, I told him about that.

他一回家,我就把那件事告诉他了。

- 7)I knew something was wrong immediately I arrived.

我一到那里就发现有些事儿不对劲。

8) I came immediately I had eaten.

我一吃完马上就来了。

Cf I came immediately after I had eaten.

(意思同上,但 immediately 仅充当修饰时间状语从句的副词。)

### 38 The moment ,The instant 与 The minute

1 作为名词 ,moment ,instant 与 minute 都能表示“瞬间”的意思,它们也都能与 that 一道或单独充当连词引导时间状语从句,表示“一……就”。

1) She came the moment he asked her to.

他一叫她来,她就来了。

2) The moment this happens , a spot or line of light appears on the radar screen , showing the position and distance of the object.

就在发生的那一瞬间,雷达屏幕上立刻出现了一个光点或光束,将该物体所在的位置与距离都显示出来了。

3) The very moment I closed my eyes , I fell asleep.

我刚一合眼就睡着了。

(在 moment 前加上了修饰成分 very,在引导从句的名词 instant , minute 前也可以用 very 修饰。)

4) The instant I heard the news I came.

一听到这个消息我就来了。

5) I'll call you the instant I know.

我一知道了马上给你去电话。

(和由 when 等引导的时间状语从句一样,从句中应以一般现在时表示将来时间。)

6)The instant I saw him I knew he was my brother.

我一见到他就知道他是我的兄弟。

Cf :At the instant I saw him I knew he was my brother.

(意思同上,但 instant 为名词。)

7)He ll do it the minute he has time.

他一有时间就会做这件事的。

8)Although we hadn t met for 25 years , I recognized him the minute that I saw him.

虽然有 25 年没见过面了,一见面我就认出了他。

9)I understood everything the minute I saw her face.

一看到她的面孔我一切都明白了。

### 39 Once 与 As soon as

1 Once 意为“……就,一旦”等,可引导时间状语从句。

1)Once you show any fear ,they will attack you.

一旦你露出害怕的样子,他们就会攻击你。

2)Once printed ,the book will be very popular.

该书一旦出版将会很受欢迎。

(Once 后省略了 it is。如其他时间状语从句一样,once 后的一般现在时表示将来时间。It is 之所以可以省略是因为从

句与主句中的主语相同,而且谓语部分含有动词 be. )

- 3) Once you talk to him , you will find he is a very honest person.

你只要和他谈谈,就会知道他是一个很诚实的人。

- 4) A good opportunity appears only once , once it is lost , it will never return.

良机只有一次,一旦坐失,就再也得不到了。

(前一个 once 意为“一次”,后一个 once 才是引导时间状语从句的连词。)

- 5) In many countries people relax once they have a job , knowing they will almost never be fired. ( Alison R. Lanier : Living in the U. S. A. )

在许多国家,人们一旦找到了工作就可能松懈下来,因为他们明白,他们几乎永远不会被炒掉。

- 2 As soon as 是一个使用频率很高的短语连词,意为“一……就”,从句中以一般现在时表示将来时间。

- 6) The pupils were quiet as soon as the teacher came in.  
老师一进来学生们就安静下来了。

- 7) She got married as soon as she left university.  
她一离开大学就结婚了。

- 8) Come here as soon as you finish the work.  
一做完那项工作马上到这里来。

- 9) Do it as soon as you can.  
尽可能快地做这件事。

## 40 No sooner... than ,Scarcely... before 与 Hardly... when

1 No sooner... than 意为“刚……就”。这种结构通常要用到过去完成时与一般过去时。如将含有否定词的 No sooner 提到句首,主句部分应采用倒装结构。

1) The journalist had no sooner returned home than he was told to go to another country.

这位记者还没来得及踏进国门便被告知要去另一个国家。

(No sooner 部分通常用过去完成时,than 从句用一般过去时。)

2) No sooner had he got well than he left the hospital and started to work.

他身体刚好就离开医院开始工作了。

(为了强调的目的,no sooner 被提到了句首, had 也与主语交换了位置。)

3) No sooner had we sat down than we found it was time to go.

我们刚一坐下就发现是该走的时间了。

4) She had no sooner seen it than she began to cry.

她刚一看到那个东西就哭了。

2 Scarcely... before(或 when),与 no sooner... than 意思相同,常译作“一……就”。主、从句动词的时态用法也与 no sooner... than 的用法相同。

5) He had scarcely entered the office when the phone



rang.

他刚进办公室电话铃就响了。

- 6) Scarcely had he entered the office before the phone rang.

(意思同上,因 scarcely 提前而引起部分倒装。)

- 7) She has scarcely recovered from the entrancement of this beautiful day-dream when Goro and Sharpless appear in the garden. (quoted from "the Story of Madame Butterfly")

她刚从白日梦的陶醉中缓过神来, Goro 与 Sharpless 就在花园里出现了。

(这个句子引自《蝴蝶夫人》的剧情介绍,因全篇采用现在时,通常采用一般过去时与过去完成时的 Scarcely... before 句型也作了相应调整,用了现在完成时与一般现在时。)

- 8) Scarcely were his ashes cold before there arose a controversy over the punishment of heretics.

他尸骨未寒,有关惩罚异教徒的争议就出现了。

(像这种前后均采用一般过去时的例子也不少,但作为学习英语的中国人还是保守点好,待这种用法在英美得到普遍认可后再用也不迟。)

- 3) Hardly... when (或 before) 意为“刚刚……就”,与前边两个连词的意义与用法均相同。

- 9) Hardly had we arrived when she started crying to go home.

我们刚到达,她就哭着要回家了。

(因 hardly 提前而引起部分倒装。)

10) We had hardly arrived before we had to go back.

我们刚到那里就得往回赶。

11) The words were hardly out of his mouth when he began to cough.

话刚出口他便咳嗽起来。

(像这种以一般过去时代替过去完成时的例子并不鲜见,但暂不宜模仿。)

### 【注意】

使用上述连词,一要注意时态;二要注意词序,该倒装时得倒装;三要注意词语的搭配,如只有 no sooner 才能配 than,其他几例都只能配 before 或 when;四要注意文体,尽管与 as soon as 意思差不多,但它们主要用于书面语言,特别是那些以 no sooner 等开头的倒装结构。

## 41 Every time, Each time, First time 与 Last time

1) Every time 与 each time 作为副词,意为“每一次,每回”;当其用作连词时,常译作“每次做……时”。

1) John wins every time we play the chess.

我们每次下棋约翰总是赢。

2) Every time I saw him, I was overcome with his brilliance.

每次我见到他,都会为他的聪颖所倾倒。

3) Why do my eyes close every time I sneeze?

为什么我每次打喷嚏时眼睛都会闭着？

4) Each time he spells the word , he makes the same mistake.

每次拼写这个单词他总犯同样的错误。

5) Each time he comes here he brings me some interesting books.

每次他来这里总会给我带些有趣的书来。

6) Is it necessary to change the valve each time I change the tire ?

有必要每次换轮胎时都换阀门吗？

7) Please show your Reader's Card each time you re-enter the Reading Room.

每次重新进入阅览室的时候 ,都请您出示您的阅览证。

**2** The first time ,the last time ,the next time ,any time ,all the time 与 the whole time 等也都可用作连词 ,引导时间状语从句。

8) The first time I went to Washington D. C. , I visited the White House.

第一次去华盛顿 ,我参观了白宫。

9) The last time he went to Canada , he visited Niagara Falls.

最后一次去加拿大 ,他游览了尼亚加拉大瀑布。

10) The last time I heard of him he was in the army.

上次收到他的来信时他还在部队里。

11) Take me (the) next time you go abroad.

下次出国时请把我带上。

12) I suppose you told them all that we live in Buckingham Palace, and promised to give their kind regards to His Royal Highness next time you meet him.

我想你已告诉他们我们家就住在白金汉宫内,并答应下次见到王子殿下时会代他们转答对王子的诚挚问候。

13) You can call me any time you want to.

你任何时候想打电话给我都可以。

14) All the time I had been talking, Max had been writing on his pad.

在我讲话的整个过程中,马克斯一直在他的便笺簿上写字。

15) The whole time she had been explaining about the prescription labels, I had been watching Max.

在她解释处方标签的整个过程中,我一直在注视着马克斯。

## 42 时间状语从句中的省略

1 下列连词的后边可直接跟-ing 动词:after, before, since, when(ever), while 与 whilst.

1) He wrote his greatest novel while (he was) working in the countryside.

他在农村工作期间写了他最好的小说。

2) The American professor donated all his money to the Hope Project before leaving for the States.

回美国前这位美国教授将他全部的钱都捐给了希望工程。

(Before leaving for the United States 相当于 before he left for the United States。当然,我们也可以将 before 看作介词,而将后边的-ing 动词看作介词宾语。)

3) She couldn't help from crying whenever (she was) singing the song My Family is on the Song Hua Lake.

不管什么时候,一唱起《我的家在东北松花江上》,她便忍不住要流泪。

4) After reading the letter, he decided to join the army.  
读过这封信后,他决定参军。

(After 与 before 一样,既可用作连词也可用介词。)

2) Once, until, when(ever), while 等连词后可直接跟-ed 动词。

5) Once published, the novel caused a remarkable stir.  
一出版,这本小说立即引起了极大的震动。

(Once published 可视为 Once it was published 的省略。)

6) He kept fighting until badly wounded and carried to the dressing station by his comrades-in-arms.

直到严重负伤被战友们抬到包扎所以前,他始终战斗着。

(Until badly wounded and carried... 可视为 Until he was badly wounded and carried... 的省略。)

7) Whenever punished by his parents, the little boy will turn to his grandma for protection.

不管何时受到父母的惩罚,这个小男孩都会去奶奶那里寻求保护。

(Whenever punished. . . 是 whenever he is punished 的省略形式。)

8)When emitted ,neutrons travel at a high velocity ,and it is known that such fast neutrons have little chance of being captured by the fissile uranium.

中子被放出后,将以极高的速度运动。据信,如此快速运动的中子被裂变铀俘获的机率是很低的。

(When emitted = when they are emitted)

3 在 as soon as ,once ,when( ever ) ,while 等连词后可直接跟形容词、介词短语等从句中原有的表语,而将动词 be 连同主语一并删除。

9)When in difficulty ,consult the manual.

碰到困难时,请参阅说明书。

(When in difficulty = when you are in difficulty)

10)When necessary ,the fuel rods can be removed and replaced.

必要时,可将燃料棒取下来更换。

(When necessary = when it is necessary)

11)Once necessary ,they will send there more troops.

一旦需要,他们会向那里派出更多的军队。

(Once necessary 由 once it is necessary 省略而来。)

12)While in China ,the American youth was known as a

living Lei Feng.

在中国期间,这位美国青年被称为活雷锋。

(While in China = while he was in China)

13) The iron could be stored while still hot.

这种烙铁可以在它仍然是热的时候就收藏起来。

(While still hot = while it is still hot)

4 口语中,有时可省略引导时间状语从句的连词 when.

14) The twin brothers will be twenty-seven come November.

十一月来临时,这对双胞胎兄弟就要满 27 岁了。

(Come November = when November comes)

15) Dinner over, they began to play mah-jong.

饭后他们开始打麻将。

(Dinner over = when dinner was over)

16) This done, they went out for a walk.

干完这件事后他们就出外散步去了。

(This done = when this was done)

## 从属连词与条件状语从句

### 43 If ,When 与 If and when

1 If 是引导条件状语从句时使用频率最高的连词。常译作“如果、假若”等。

1) If Japanese Prime Minister Koizumi insists on paying tribute to the Yasukuni Shrine which houses many of the executed war criminals , the neighboring nations will launch further protests.

靖国神社中供奉着许多被处决的战犯 ,如果日本首相小泉坚持参拜的话 ,周边国家会发起进一步的抗议活动。

(小泉是否会坚持这样做尚不清楚 ,但说话者认为“坚持参拜”的可能性较大 ,故用一般现在时 insists. )

2) If the girl's death is due to anybody , then it's due to him. (J. B. Priestley : An Inspector Calls)

要是这女孩子的死得归咎于什么人的话 ,那就得归咎于他。

(主句前边的 then 意为“那么” ,由于经常和 if 从句一道出现 ,有的语法书便将它们视为关联连词。)

3) If you have finished your homework , you may go out and play.

如果你已经完成了家庭作业的话 ,你可以出去玩了。

(此处用完成时 have finished 是为了强调“完成”这个概念。)

4) Shall we postpone the sports meeting if it rains tomor-



row ?

如果明天下雨的话 ,我们会推迟召开运动会吗 ?

(在表示真实条件的 if 从句中 ,即或出现了表示将来时间的  
时间状语 tomorrow ,动词仍用一般现在时 rains. )

5) I will do it , if I can.

如果我能做的话我一定做。

6) If I can , I ll do it.

(与例 5 意思差不多 ,但此句更强调做的条件。例 5 将主句放在前面且用了 will 而非 will 的缩略形式 ,似乎更强调说话者的意志。)

7) If two men ride on a horse , one must ride behind.

( A proverb )

如果两人共骑一马 ,总有一人要坐在后边。

8) If one sheep leaps over the ditch , all the rest will follow. ( A proverb )

如果一只羊跳过沟渠 ,其余的羊无不跟进。

9) If a man deceives me once , shame on him ; if a man deceives me twice , shame on me. ( A proverb )

如果一个人欺骗我一次 ,可耻的是他 ;如果一个人欺骗我两次 ,可耻的是我。

10) If you run after two hares you will catch neither. ( A proverb )

如果同时追赶两只兔子 ,你将一无所获。

11) If work is a kind of pleasure , then life is Paradise !

If work is a kind of obligation , then life is Hell !

如果工作是一种乐趣 ,人生就是天堂 !

如果工作是一种义务 ,人生就是地狱。

**【注意】**

尽管在表示真实条件的 if 从句中 ,通常要用一般现在时代替一般将来时 ,但从句中出现 will 的情况也有 ,这种 will 或表示“意愿”(相当于 be willing to) ,或表示从句中暗含着另一个 if 从句。

- a. If you will come back , please let me know.

如果你愿意回来 ,请告诉我。

(Will 相当于 are willing to. )

Cf If you come back , please let me know.

如果你回来请告诉我。

- b. I'll tell them I'm a duke , if that'll do any good.

如果告诉他们我是公爵会带来什么好处的话 ,我会告诉他们我是公爵的。

(If that'll do any good 中暗含着另一个条件句 :if I tell them I'm a duke. )

- 2 If 表示与现在事实相反的假设 ,从句用过去时 ,主句用 would (should) 加动词原形。

12) If I were a bird , I would fly out of the window and enjoy the spring sunshine to my heart's content.

如果我是一只小鸟 ,我会飞出窗外 ,去尽情的享受这春日阳光。

(在虚拟的条件中使用动词 be ,无论主语是第几人称 ,都用 were ,但口语中当主语为 I ,he ,she 或 it 时也常用 was. )

13) If there were no clouds , we should not enjoy the sun. ( A proverb )

如果没有乌云 ,我们就不会觉得阳光可爱。

(事实是有“乌云”。)

14) If wishes were horses , beggars would ride. ( A proverb )

如果愿望是马 ,乞丐也有马骑。

15) If he were here , should you be glad ?

如果他现在在这里的话 ,你会高兴吗 ?

(实际情况是他现在不在这里。)

**3** 如果 If 从句表示与过去情况相反的假设 ,从句用 had + 过去分词形式 ,主句用 should ( would ) have + 过去分词形式。

16) If the Gang of Four's plot had succeeded , China would have been plunged into an abyss of misery.

如果“四人帮”的阴谋得逞 ,中国势必已被投入灾难的深渊。

(条件句中的假设分明与过去的事实相反。)

17) If he had been taller , he would have been a member of the basketball team.

如果长得高一点 ,他可能已经是这个篮球队的一员了。

(事实是当初他个子不够高 ,也没被篮球队录取。)

**4** 如果 if 从句表示一个自认为实现的可能性不大的条件时 ,句中的动词仍需采用虚拟式。

18) If you weren't to make greater efforts next week, you wouldn't be able to fulfill your plan by the end of the month.

如果下周你不做出更大努力的话,你便不可能在月底之前完成你们的计划。

19) If they knew the whole truth later, they would raise a hue and cry against us.

如果以后他们了解了全部真相的话,他们会大吵大嚷地反对我们。

20) If it should rain tomorrow, we would have to cancel the match.

如果明天竟然下雨的话,我们将不得不取消这场比赛。

**【注意】**

当从句中的动词为 were, had, should, would, could 时,可将这些动词提到条件句的句首而省略连词 if.

c. Were it not for him, I should not hesitate to speak up.

要不是为了他,我不会有顾虑而不发言。

Cf: If it were not for him, I should not hesitate to speak up.

d. Had she had the operation ten years earlier, she might not have died from the terrible disease.

她如果早十年动了手术的话,可能不会死于这个可怕的疾病。

Cf If she had had the operation ten years earlier , she might not have died from the terrible disease.

5 When 通常引导时间状语从句 ,但有时也可引出条件状语从句。与 if 从句相比 ,由 when 引出的条件句实现的可能性要大一些。

21) He will likely recover when he undergoes the operation.

倘若动手术的话 ,他有可能康复。

22) You shall have the apple when you say " Please ".

你要是说“请”就能得到这个苹果。

23) Come when you are ready.

你要是准备好了就来吧。

(这里的所谓条件也暗含了时间的因素 ,如果将它们作为时间状语从句看待 ,分别译作“他动了手术后”、“当你说‘请时’”与“当你准备好时” ,也未尝不可。)

24) Turn off the switch immediately when anything goes wrong with the machine.

如果机器发生了任何故障 ,请立即把电闸关上。

(将句中的 when 换成 if ,句子的意思并没有什么变化。)

25) A man is twice miserable when he fears his misery before it comes. (A proverb)

如果痛苦来前就害怕 ,真是双倍的可怜人。

6 If and when 也可以写成 when and if ,常译作“若是……的时候 ,假若”等。由它引导的条件状语从句多见于法律或商业文件。

26) If and when the film gets the green light , be sure you've read the book first.

如果有一天 ,这部影片获准发行 ,千万别忘了先读完原著 (再去看看)。

#### 44 If only ,Only if 与 If and only if (Iff)

1 If only 意为“如果……就好了 ,但愿” ,可用以表现某种希冀和愿望 ,常脱离主句单独使用 ,句中动词用虚拟语气。

1) If only I had met her earlier .

如果早点碰到她就好了。

(在这种结构中 ,主句通常不出现。)

2) It's a good idea , if only we could carry it out .

这是个主意 ,我们要是能将它付诸实施就好了。

3) If only it would stop raining .

要是雨能停下来就好了。

2 If only 还可以表示“即使没有其他原因 ,也为了”这层意思。

在这种情况下 ,它的用法更接近原因状语从句或让步状语从句。与前一用法的区别在于 ,这里要用直陈语气 ,特别是过去式。

4) Mary has to tell Johnson more , if only to stop him pestering .

玛丽不得不向约翰逊多讲一些情况 ,哪怕只是为了摆脱他的纠缠。

5) A one-to-one meeting with him was necessary , if only

for a deeper exchange of views.

和他一对一的会面是必要的,哪怕这样做只是为了更深入的交换各自的看法。

**2** Only if 意为“只要能(符合某种条件)就行”。

6) Only if they realize the importance of the issue, all the problems can be properly solved.

只要他们能意识到这件事的重要性,所有的困难都能得到合理的解决。

7) The editorial is entitled “ Freedom, yes, but only if U. S. Strategic goals are satisfied ”.

这篇社论的题目是“要自由吗,行,但要等到美国的战略目标达到之后”。

8) I will come home only if you come with me.

只有你和我一道走,我就回家去。

Cf I will only come home if you come with me.

倘若你和我一道走,我就回家去。

I won't come home unless you come with me.

除非你和我一道走,否则我就不回家去。

**3** If and only if 较 only if 语气更强,在逻辑与数学中,它常被用来表示充分必要条件(necessary and sufficient), if and only if 也可缩写成 iff.

9) Witches are real if and only if there are criteria for identifying witches.

只有在判断女巫的标准存在的情况下,女巫才能是真实的。

## 45 If any ,If anything 与 If you please

1) If any 意为“假如有 ,即使有” ,虽有连词 if 开头 ,其作用却相当于一个副词。

1) Point out errors , if any .

如有错误 ,请指正。

2) Correct the mistakes , if any , in the following sentences .

下列句子中 ,如有错误请更正。

2) If anything 意为“若要说 ,说起来 ,要说有什么区别的话”等 ,它常被用来加强或改变刚刚陈述的内容 ,也可用在否定的陈述之后 ,作为一种补充。

3) Although he s been on a diet for several months , he looks fatter , if anything .

虽然他已节食几个月 ,若要说什么效果的话 ,也只是看起来比以前胖。

4) I never had to clean up after him . If anything , he did most of the cleaning .

我从来不需在他走后来打扫清洁 ,事实是 ,他承担了大部分打扫工作。

3) If you please 是一种非常礼貌也非常正规的说法 ,意为“可以的话 ,对不起 ,请劳驾”等。

5) Edge a little , if you please .

对不起 ,请稍微挪动一下。

6) Take your seats , if you please .



请就坐。

- 4) If anywhere 意为“如果有什么地方的话,就在那个地方”。其形式类似于一个省略了若干成分的条件状语从句,实际上却相当于一个副词,它可以位于句末,也可以插入句中,甚至可作为插入成分被放入括号内。

7) You will find it in Beijing, if anywhere.

要是有的话,在北京可以找到它。

8) Where, if anywhere, do we go in the future?

如果有地方可去的话,我们未来会去哪里?

9) Where (if anywhere) did you go in the summer?

夏天你如去过什么地方的话,去了哪里?

(用了括号后, if anywhere 前后不再使用逗号。)

10) Where, if anywhere, did we go wrong?

如果有什么错了的话,我们错在哪里?

- 5) If I may say so 是另一个以 if 开头的固定说法,意为“如果可以这么说的话”。它常附着在一个评论或陈述之上,使之显得客气与委婉。类似的说法有: If I may use such an expression(如果我能用这样一种说法的话), if one may say so(如果人们可以这样说的话), If I may be allowed so violent a metaphor(如果我得以使用这样一种过于偏激的比喻的话)。此类条件句又称间接条件句,因为它和一般意义上的条件还是有所不同的。

11) This year is very good for the film industry if I may say so.

对于电影业而言,今年是很不错的一年,如果可以这么说的

话。

- 12) You should not be too strict with your students if I may say so.

如果可以这么说的话,我觉得你不应对学生过于严格。

- 6 If a day (an hour, an inch, a man, a pound) 等 if 从句的省略形式常被附着在某一陈述之后,以表示说话者对所述内容的确信程度。

- 13) She is eighty, if a day.

她肯定有 80 岁了。

(If a day 相当于 if she is a day old.)

- 14) The man stands six feet, if an inch.

这个男的足有六英尺高。

- 15) He weighed ten stone, if a pound.

他体重无论如何也有 140 磅。

- 7 由于主语与动词 be(或与主句动词相同的动词)的省略,条件句中除了 if,有时就只剩下了单个的形容词、副词、过去分词或介词短语。

- 16) We shall fight to the last man, if necessary.

如有必要,我们将战斗到最后一个人。

(If necessary 由 if it is necessary 省略而成。)

- 17) I shall arrive there by five, if not sooner.

我将五点以前到那里,如果不能更早一点的话。

(If not sooner 由 if I do not arrive there sooner 省略而成。)

- 18) If in doubt, you may consult the dictionary.

如有疑问的话,你可以去查词典。

(If in doubt 源自 if you are in doubt. )

- 19) In regard to conferences , they are necessary and good , but only good if followed by action. (N. Bethune )  
说到会议 ,它们既是必要的也是有益的 ,但只有随后能付诸行动的会议才是真正有益的。

(If followed by action 源自 if they are followed by action. )

## 46 As long as ,So long as ,On condition that 与 In case

- 1 As long as 与 so long as 引导条件状语从句时 ,表示“ 只要…… ,如果……的话 ”等意思。

1) I'll lend it to you as long as you handle it with care.  
只要你小心使用 ,我会借给你。

2) So long as you are satisfied , I don't mind.  
只要你满意 ,我不在乎。

3) As long as there is still a ray of hope for peaceful reunification , we'll do our utmost to achieve it.  
只要和平统一还有一线希望 ,我们都会尽最大的努力去实现它。

4) The Interior Minister said he would still support them , as long as they didn't break the rules.  
内政部长说只要他们不违反规则 ,他仍将支持他们。

5) There is nothing unsurmountable so long as one makes

constant efforts and struggles unremittingly.

只要坚持努力,不懈奋斗,就没有征服不了的东西。

- 6) A man can find his place wherever he goes so long as he is willing to pay for it.

一个人在哪儿都能找到自己的天地,只要他肯为之付出代价。

- 7) Go on tolling the bell as long as one is a monk. (A proverb)

(只要)做一天和尚,(就)撞一天钟。

**【注意】**

连词 as long as 有时可能会与比较状语从句中的 as long as (与……一样长)相混淆,从而产生歧义。

You may keep the novel as long as you wish.

只要你愿意,你可以保留这本小说。

(As long as you wish 被看作条件状语从句。)

这本小说你想保留多久就可保留多久。

(As you wish 为比较状语从句。)

- 2) On condition that 属书面语,意为“在……的条件下,假如”等。

- 8) I'll come on condition that my parents are invited, too.

在我的双亲也受到邀请的情况下,我才会来。

(像一般条件句一样,从句中用一般现在时表示将来时间。)

- 9) He spoke to reporters on condition that he was not identified.

在不暴露其身份的条件下他与记者们谈了话。

- 10) The discount of 3% agreed upon was granted only on condition that no balance was outstanding from previous accounts.

协议规定的3%的折扣只是在以往账目没有任何拖欠的情况下才提供的。

- 3 In case 引导条件状语从句时,常译作“在……的情况下,万一……的话”等。但在英国英语中, in case 还可以引导目的状语从句,表示“以防,以免”等意思。

- 11) In case anything important happens, please call me up.

万一发生了什么重要的事,请给我去电话。

- 12) In case I forget, please remind me.

如果我忘了,请提醒我。

- 13) In case I m prevented from coming, please excuse me.

万一我因故来不了,请原谅。

- 14) The Government could not tell the manufacturers what they were making in case they should give away the secret of radar.

政府无法告诉制造商们他们在制造什么,怕的是他们会泄漏了雷达的秘密。

- 15) Do this in case a fire breaks out.

在发生火灾的情况下,请做这件事。

(或)请做这件事以防发生火灾。(仅限于英国英语)

(在没有上下文的情况下,这个句子在英国英语中可能产生歧义。)

4 In the event (that) 主要用于美国英语,意为“如果;万一在……的时候”。

16) In the event that she has not been informed, I will tell her.

如果还没有人通知她的话,我会告诉她。

17) In the event that a fire should break out in this densely built-up area, many lives would be lost.

在这个建筑密度很大的地方一旦发生了火灾,很多人就可能丧生。

(句中采用了虚拟语气。)

## 47 Suppose, Supposing, Assume, Assuming 与 Provided, Providing

这是几个由动词及其现在分词或过去分词演变而来的连词。作为动词,它们的词义分别是“假设”与“提供”,假设本身就意味着条件,而条件也可成为提供的内容。这正是它们能转变职能,引导条件状语从句的根本原因。此外, supposing that 与 assuming that 还可引导让步状语从句。

1) Suppose he is absent, what shall we do?

假设他不在,我们怎么办?

2) Suppose it rained, we would still go.

假如下雨的话,我们还是要去。

(可能性较小的假设,条件句与主句中都用虚拟语气。)

- 3) Supposing something should go wrong, what would you do then?

万一出了什么差错,你会怎么办?

- 4) Supposing you had one million dollars, what would you do?

假设你有一百万美元的话,你会干什么?

(表现与事实相反的假设,句子用了虚拟语气。尽管 suppose 或 supposing 在此相当于连词 if,但有些词典仍将它们归于动词的范畴,而不给它们应有的连词地位。)

- 5) Assume (that) " $v$ " is the velocity of the steam, then  $R$  is its relative velocity.

假设  $v$  是蒸汽的速度,那么  $R$  便是它的相对速度。

- 6) Assume that the rise in the temperature of the water is 15 degrees, how much water must be delivered to the condenser?

假设水的温度升高 15 度,试问需要给冷凝器提供多少水?

- 7) Assuming you are a stone above your youthful weight, you probably do want to lose a few pounds.

假设你年纪轻轻体重却超出正常体重一石(约合 14 磅或 6.35 千克),你很可能希望减去几磅。

- 8) But assuming that the talks make progress, won't they do too little, too late?

但是假定谈判有进展,他们是不是做得太少太晚呢?

9) Assuming (that) there is no loss of speed over the blades, calculate the outlet velocity of the steam.

假设通过叶片时的速度不降低, 试计算蒸汽的出口速度。

10) I shall go providing (that) it doesn't rain.

倘若不下雨我就去。

(Provided 与 providing 意为“if and only if” 因此比 if 更加严谨, 更加正规。)

11) It would be pleasant living in Glasgow providing you were living in a nice flat.

倘若有一套像样的房间住, 在格拉斯哥生活是很惬意的。

12) Provided (that) there is no opposition, I will act as representative of our class.

如果没有人反对, 我将担任本班的代表。

13) Children were permitted into the hall, provided they sat at the back.

孩子们获准进入了大厅, 条件是坐在后边。

14) She was prepared to come, provided that she might bring her daughter.

倘若能带女儿, 她准备来。

## 48 Granting (that), Granted (that) 与 Given that

1 Grant 的原意是“准许; 答应; 允许”(give especially what is wanted or requested), granting (that) 与 granted (that) 是在 grant 的现在分词与过去分词的基础上形成的连词, 它



们既可引导条件状语从句,也可引导让步状语从句。作为连词,两者可以不加区别的使用。

- 1) Granted that the firm has not broken the law, is the law what it should be?

假定该公司并没有触犯这项法律,该法律是否是它应有的样子?

- 2) Granting (that) he is in hospital, he can't do us much harm.

如果他在医院的话,他便不能怎么加害于我们了。

- 3) Granted (granting) that you are right there, that does not follow you are always right.

即或你在那一点上是对的,那并不意味着你永远都是正确的。

(Granted that 或 granting that 在此引导让步状语从句。关于让步状语从句中这两个连词的用法请参阅本书让步状语从句的相关章节。)

- 2 Given that 是在 give 的过去分词的基础上形成的可引导条件状语从句的连词或介词。作为连词, given that 引导的从句为条件状语从句,常译为“如果有……,假定是……;考虑到……,没想到……”等。

- 4) Given that they are inexperienced, they have done a good job.

考虑到他们缺乏经验这一点,他们的工作已做得很不错了。

- 5) It seemed churish to send him away, given that he only wanted to take photographs.

如果考虑到他的要求只是拍拍照而已,把他撵走似乎过于粗暴。

6) This may seem an odd view to take, given that I am strongly in favor of the treaty.

因为我是完全赞同这个条约的,因此采取这个观点似乎有点奇怪。

7) Given his support, I think we'll win the election.

如果获得他的支持,我想我们能赢得这场选举。

(此处的 given 为介词,其后的名词为介词宾语。)

## 49 If not, If...not 与 Unless

1 If not 可以被视为一个省略了若干成分的条件句,省略了哪些部分可以根据上下文来判断。

1) Go to bed. If not, I'll tell Father.

睡觉去,如果不去的话,我要告诉爸爸。

(If not 意为 If you do not go to bed.)

2) He may be busy. If so, I'll call later. If not, can I see him now?

他可能很忙,如果是那样的话,我稍后再打电话过来。如果不忙的话,我可以现在见他吗?

(根据上下文,If so 意为 If he is busy,而 If not 则意味着 If he is not busy.)

3) I may not be free tomorrow. If not, I'll not call on you.

明天我可能没空,如果没空的话,我就不能拜访你了。

(If not 意为 If I am not free tomorrow. )

2) 在 If not 后也可以添加某些词或短语作为对前述情况的补充。补充的内容往往较前述情况更多,更快或更好。这种 if not 结构多少有点让步状语的味道。

4) They have hundreds of thousands if not millions of pounds of investment.

他们的投资如果没有数百万英镑,也有数十万英镑之多。

5) I'd like to see you tonight, if not sooner.

我想今晚就能见到你,如果不能更早一点的话。

6) Her voice, if not perfect, is nearly so.

她的声音,如果不能说十分完美的话,也接近完美。

3) Unless 意为“若非……,除非……”,是比 if...not 更为正式的表现方法。当从句主语与主句主语相同时,unless 后面的主语及动词 be 可以省略。

7) Unless you're willing to have a go, fail miserably, and have another go, success won't happen. (Phillip Adams)

除非你愿意尝试,惨败,然后再尝试,否则胜利就不可能。

8) Never look down on anybody unless you're helping them up. (Jesse Jackson)

除非你要帮人家站起来,否则,就不要居高临下看人家。

(Look down on 有“蔑视,瞧不起”的意思。用 them 回指 anybody 是非正式用法。)

9) Unless in uniform, he doesn't look like an inspector at

all.

要是不穿制服 ,他看上去一点也不像个巡官。

(Unless 后省略了与主句主语相同的 he 与系动词 is. )

- 10) People will think you have no ideas unless you express them. (Alison R. Lanier : Living in the U. S. A )

除非你把自己的想法说出来 ,否则人们便以为你没有想法。

- 3** Unless 与 if. . . not 在很多情况下可以交替使用。

- 11) Unless you postpone it , I won't be able to join you.

除非你们将活动推迟 ,否则我就无法加入你们了。

Cf : If you do not postpone it , I won't be able to join you.

如果你们不推迟的话 ,我就无法加入你们了。

(两句意思基本相同 ,但 unless 的语气要强烈一些。)

- 12) I'll be back home tomorrow unless the flight is cancelled for some reason.

我明天到家 ,除非航班因某种原因被取消了。

Cf : I'll be back home tomorrow if the flight is not cancelled for some reason.

(意思同上 ,语气略有不同。)

- 4** Unless 从句不能替换表示非真实条件的 If. . . not 从句。换句话说 ,unless 的后边通常不用虚拟语气。

- 13) I couldn't have got to the meeting on time if I hadn't caught an earlier train.

要不是赶上了早一点的火车 ,我不可能准时到会的。

Cf I couldn't have got to the meeting on time—unless I had caught an earlier train.

我未能及时赶来开会 除非我赶上了较早一班的火车。

(意思完全相反。后者讲的是未准时参加会议的事实,而前者却是与过去事实相反的假设。)

14) She'd be a good wife if she didn't complain so much.

如果她不是抱怨没完的话,倒是个好妻子。

(如果将此句中的 if...not 换成了 unless 从句,整个句子的意思便颠倒过来了。)

5 If...not 从句可以重叠使用,而 unless 从句却不能。

15) You can't expect to lose weight if you do not change your eating habit and if you do not do morning exercises every day.

如果你不改变你的饮食习惯,如果你不每天做早操,你就别指望减肥了。

Cf: You can't expect to lose weight unless you change your eating habit and do morning exercises every day.

(意思同上。但例 15 中并列的两个条件句已合为一句。)

6 Unless 结构虽然相当于 if...not 结构,并在一些情况下可以互换,但 unless 从句仍可用否定式,而 if...not 结构却不能再用否定形式了。

16) Don't ask me any questions unless you really don't un-

derstand.

除非真的不懂,否则不要提任何问题。

- 17) They meet every Saturday to practice spoken English unless one of them is not free.

他们每个星期六都聚集在一起练习英语口语,除非他们中有一人没有空。

- 7 Unless 结构明确地指明了满足某种条件后即可达到某种结果,因此,它不可能出现在结果尚不清楚的疑问句中。而 if...not 结构却可以用于疑问句。

- 18) Will he change his mind if we could not meet all his requirements?

如果我们不能满足他的全部条件的话,他会改变主意吗?

## 从属连词与让步状语从句

### 50 Though 与 Although

1 Though 与 although 意为“虽然,尽管”,是表示转折让步关系的主要从属连词。相比之下,though 的使用更灵活一些,它可以在句首,也可以在句中,而 although 出现在句首的情况要多一些。此外,though 可用作副词并与 as,even 等构成短语连词,而 although 却没有这些功能。因 though 不及 although 正式,因此,口语中 though 的出现频率就高得多。在书面语中,although 引出的从句的谓语可用虚拟语气。

1) Personally I'm always ready to learn, although I do not always like being taught. (Winston Churchill)

就我个人而言,我非常愿意学习,尽管我并不总是乐意受教于人。

2) There is only one religion, though there are a hundred versions of it. (George Bernard Shaw)

虽然宗教只有一个,但对它的解释却有一百个版本。

3) Creative thinking should be viewed as an essential supplement to, though not a replacement for, critical thinking.

创造性思维虽然不能代替批判性思维,但却是对批判性思维的一种十分必要的补充。

4) Everybody worked with great enthusiasm although

(though)the weather was extremely cold.

每个人的工作热情都很高,尽管天气极其寒冷。

- 5)Though we drifted apart in distance I still think of you being right here. And although we have many new friends ,it is our friendship that means the most to me.

虽然我们天各一方,但我仍然觉得你就在我们这里;虽然我们有了许多新朋友,但你我之间的友谊对我来说仍然是最重要的。

- 6)Although the people there be poor ,they are nevertheless satisfied with their situation.

尽管那里的人们非常贫困,但他们却对自己的处境很满意。

(从句采用了 be 型虚拟语气。)

- 2 汉语中的“虽然”与“但是”经常出现在同一个句子中,但英语中用了从属连词 though 或 although 就不能在主句前再用并列连词 but。如要强调反面,主句内可用 yet 或 still 以加强语气。

- 7)Although you have so far demonstrated little faith in my ability to pay ,I yet hope to demonstrate that I am somebody who pays his debts—for example , to you.

(Friedrich Nietzsche)

尽管,到目前为止,你对我的还款能力并没有表现出一丝一毫的信心,但我还是希望向你显示我是一个能够还债的堂堂正正的人,譬如说,还债给你。

- 8)Although we ve come to the end of the road ,still I



can't let you go.

虽然已走到路的尽头,我仍然不能放你走。

- 9) We love our home, though our feet can leave it, yet, our hearts cannot.

我们爱自己的家,我们的脚可以离它而去,可我们的心却不能。

- 10) Although most people neither look nor act like heroes in their normal life, yet many of them when confronted with danger reveal outstanding courage.

虽然大多数人在日常生活中既不像英雄,也没有做出什么英雄的举动,但他们中的许多人在面临危险时还是表现出了非凡的勇气。

- 3 为了强调表语或状语,though 可以后移,而 although 没有这种用法。

- 10) Poor though he is, he is happy.

虽然很穷,但他很幸福。

- 11) Tired though he was, he insisted on coming to the meeting.

虽然累,但他还是坚持来开会了。

- 12) They failed to solve the problem, hard though they tried.

他们未能解决问题,尽管做了很大努力。

(强调的部分是充当状语的副词 hard.)

- 13) If you find yourself sharing a cab with several strangers (legal in some cities but not in others), you will often

be expected to pay full price ,unfair though that may seem. ( Alison R. Lanier *Living in the U. S. A* )

如果你发现出租车上还坐了几个陌生人(这在某些城市里是合法的,而在另一些城市里不合法),你往往还得付全价,尽管这看起来不甚合理。

- 4 As 也可以引导让步状语从句,但必须像 *poor though he is* 那样,将从句中的某些成分放到 *as* 的前边去,如充当表语的形容词或名词,充当状语的副词,以及动词的一部分等。对于充当表语的名词,还要求去掉名词前面的冠词。

14) *Rich as he is , he never donates any money for any charity organizations.*

尽管富有,但他从不向任何慈善机构捐款。

Cf :*As he is rich , many poor relatives turn to him for help.*

因为富有,很多穷亲戚向他寻求帮助。

(*As he is rich* 是原因状语从句,而 *rich as he is* 属让步状语从句。)

15) *Injured as he was , he continued to give comfort and first aid to the other passengers.*

尽管他也受伤了,但他还是继续安慰其他的乘客并给他们提供急救措施。

16) *Fool as he looks , he always seems to make the wisest proposals.*

尽管看上去傻乎乎的,他似乎总能提出最聪明的建议。

17) *Much as we liked Washington , this seemed a perfect*

time to get away from the city , if the right job offer came along. ( George Bush : Looking Forward )

尽管我们很喜欢华盛顿 ,但现在看来却是离开这座城市的最好时机 ,如果有了恰当的工作任命的话。

(提到句首的 much 在从句中充当动词 liked 的状语。)

18) Child as he is , he knew how difficult it is to earn a living in the world.

虽然还是孩子 ,他已经知道在这个世界上谋生有多难。

(在提到句首的可数名词 child 前已去掉不定冠词 a。)

Cf : Though he is a child , he knew how difficult it is to earn a living in the world.

(意思同上 ,但从句中的 child 前有不定冠词 a。)

19) Try as he would , he could not finish writing the book by the end of the month as required.

尽管他努力这样做 ,却无法按要求在月底前写完这本书。

(Try 被提到了句首 ,从句出现了部分倒装。)

**【注意】**

That 从句也可以像 as 从句那样将充当表语的名词或形容词提到 that 前以表示“让步”的意思。

a. Child that he was , he knew what was right and what was wrong.

虽然他还是孩子 ,他已知道什么是对 ,什么是错。

b. Rich that she is , she never looks down upon the poor.

尽管她很富有 ,但她决不会瞧不起穷人。

## 51 Even if 与 Even though

1 Even if 与 even though 虽然都可译作：“即使……，纵使……”，但 even if 从句带有强烈的假定性，而 even though 更类似于 although，从句的内容被认定为事实。

1) Even if his family is very poor, she loves him.

即使他的家很穷，她仍爱他。

(Even if 从句的内容含有假定性，因此他家可能穷，也可能不穷。)

Cf: Even though his family is very poor, she still loves him.

尽管他家很穷，但她仍然爱他。

(Even though 以从句的内容为前提，“他家很穷”被说话者认定为事实。)

2) Even if I have to sell my house, I'll send my children abroad so that they could get the best education.

即使把房子卖了，我也要送孩子们出国，让他们得到最好的教育。

(“卖房”是最坏的打算，但还不是事实。)

3) Even though he is willing to sell his house, no one will buy it.

纵使他想把房子卖了，也没有人愿意买。

(“想把房子卖了”的打算已经存在。)

4) Even if I become a millionaire, I shall always be a socialist.

即使成了百万富翁,我仍将永远是一个社会主义者。

(“成为百万富翁”纯属假设,故用 even if.)

5) Even though I did not know anybody at the party, I had a good time.

尽管参加派对的人我一个也不认识,我却玩得很开心。

(“一个也不认识”是事实。)

6) Even if you clean it and polish it, it still won't look new.

即使你去清洗它,擦亮它,它看上去还是不会像新的。

7) Even though I've cleaned it and polished it, it still doesn't look new.

尽管我已清洗过它,并把它擦亮了,它看上去还是不像新的。

8) Even if he loses his job as deputy general manager, I think he'll continue to serve in the company.

即使失去了副总经理的职务,我想他还会继续在公司里工作。

9) Even though he has lost his job as deputy general manager, he continues to serve in the company.

尽管他已失去公司副总经理的职务,但仍继续在公司里工作。

2 Even if 与 even though 都试图表明,某一特定情况的出现并不会改变主句内容或观点的正确性,因此,在词典中,它们常常被并列,有的还在它们之间画上了等号。在使用中,也有相互替代的情形。

10) It would not matter even if (even though) he should

refuse.

即或他拒绝,也无关紧要。

11) Even if (even though) we achieve great success in our work, we should not be conceited.

即使我们的工作取得了很大的成绩,我们也不要骄傲自大。

【注意】

- A. 同 though 一样,从句里有 even if (even though), 主句的开头便不能用 but。
- B. 同 if 一样,从句以一般现在时表示将来时间。
- C. 在口语中, even though 比 though, although 的出现频率更高。

## 52 No matter (what) 与 Whatever

1 No matter 可与 what, which, who, where, when, how 等疑问词一道引导让步状语从句,常译为“无论(什么,哪一个,谁,哪里,如何)”。从句中的一般现在时和时间、条件状语从句中的现在时一样,均表示将来时间。

1) No matter what I say or how I say it, he always thinks I'm wrong.

不管我说什么,不管我如何说,他总认为我是错的。

2) No matter what happens, don't be discouraged.

无论发生了什么事,都不要气馁。

3) No matter where they take us, we'll find our own way back.

无论他们把我们带往哪里 ,我们都能找到自己回来的路。

- 4) Multinationals should face the same rules no matter where they set up shop.

无论在哪里办厂 ,跨国公司都会面对同样的规则。

- 5) He always keeps his friends close no matter how far he goes.

无论走多远 ,他总会和他的朋友们保持密切联系。

(No matter how 的后边要紧接形容词或副词。)

- 6) Any one , no matter who , may point out our shortcomings. If he is right , we will correct them.

不管是什么人 ,谁向我们指出都行。只要你说得对 ,我们就改正。

(No matter who 后省略了 he is. )

- 7) No matter who you are or what you believe , somewhere on the Internet , there are people like you.

不管你是谁 ,不管你信仰什么 ,在因特网上的某个地方 ,总有和你一样的人。

- 8) No matter what , no matter where , it s always home , if love is there.

不管是什么 ,不管在哪里 ,只要有爱在 ,那里就是家。

- 9) No matter how full a reservoir of maxims one may possess , and no matter how good one s sentiments may be , if one has not taken advantage of every concrete opportunity to act , one s character may remain entirely un-

affected for the better. (William James)

不管一个人拥有多少做人的准则,也不管他的见解有多好,如果他不能利用每一个具体的机遇付诸行动的话,他的品质可能不会有半点改善。

(该句中有两个由 no matter how 引出的让步状语从句。两个从句靠并列连词 and 连接。)

- 10) If you respect yourself, others will respect you no matter how trivial you may be. (Theodore Dreiser)

如果你看重自己,那就不管你可能怎样地无价值,别人也会尊重你。

- 11) No matter how many years one has lived, the first twenty years of his life is the longest half.

一个人不论他活多大年纪,最初的二十年是他一生中最长的一半。

- 12) No matter who he is and which political party it is, and no matter what they said and did in the past, we re willing to talk with them on issues of developing cross-straits relations and promoting peaceful reunification as long as they recognize the one-China principle and the "1992 Consensus".

不管是谁,也不管是哪一个政党,不管他们过去说了些什么,干了些什么,我们都愿意就改善海峡两岸关系以及促进和平统一与他们谈,只要他们现在承认一个中国的原则与“九二共识”就行。

- 13) Every form of addiction is bad, no matter whether



the narcotic be alcohol or morphine or idealism.

(Carl Jung : Memories , Dreams , Reflections )

任何形式的瘾都是有害的 ,不管这个麻醉剂是酒精、吗啡还是理想主义。

(在瑞士心理学家 Carl Jung 的这个著名论断中 ,从句中使用了现在时虚拟语气 ,即动词原形。)

14) No matter whether you're trying to reach customers , investors or communities , ProWolfe can help.

不管你试图联系顾客、投资人还是社区 ,ProWolfe 软件都可以给你提供帮助。

2) Whatever ,whoever ,whomever ,whichever 等由疑问词与-ever构成的复合词也可以引导让步状语从句 ,表示“无论什么 ,无论谁 ,无论哪一个”等意思。与 no matter (what ,who)相比 ,whatever ,whoever 等引导的从句没有那么正式 ,因此 ,在口语中它们比 no matter 引出的从句更常见。

15) Whatever you may do , do it well.

不管你可能做什么 ,一定要做好。

(在正式的语体中 ,“may + 动词原形”可代替一般现在时的动词形式。)

16) Whatever may happen , we are fully prepared for it.

不管会发生什么 ,我们都做好了充分的准备。

17) Whatsoever a man sows , that shall he also reap. (A proverb )

不管你播种什么,你就要收获什么。

(Whatsoever 等于 whatever.)

- 18) Whichever book you may choose to read, you could learn something from it.

不管你选择哪一本书读,你都可以从中学到某些东西。

- 19) Whoever else objects, I don't.

不管谁反对,我都不会反对。

Cf: Whoever else may object, I don't.

(以 may object 代替 objects 意思基本相同,但显得更正式。)

- 20) Whomever you quote, I won't change my opinion on this issue.

不管你引用谁的话,我都不会改变对这件事情的看法。

- 21) Wherever you are connected, part of you merges with the Net itself.

不管你在哪儿上网,你的一部分就会和网络融为一体。

- 22) Wherever you go, no matter what the weather, always bring your own sunshine.

不管你去哪儿,不管那里的天气如何,永远把你自己的阳光带上。

- 23) Some cause happiness wherever they go; others whenever they go. (Oscar Wilde)

有些人无论去哪里都会给那里带去幸福,另外一些人无论什么时候去都会给那里带去幸福。

- 24) However hot it is, you can't take off your coat.

无论多热,你都不能脱掉外套。

(However 后要紧跟形容词,这是它与其他 wh-ever 词汇不同的地方。)

25) The program, however popular, should be discontinued right now.

这个节目无论如何受欢迎,都必须马上停止。

(However popular 是 however popular it is 的省略形式。)

26) However strong you are, there's always someone stronger. (A proverb)

不管你有多么强壮,总有人比你更强壮。/强中自有强中手。

27) No sowing, no reaping, however warm the sun, gentle the rain, congenial the soil.

无论太阳多么温暖,雨水怎么调和,土地多么相宜,不播种就没有收获。

(一个 however 修饰三个形容词:warm, gentle, congenial.)

28) Whenever you may call, you'll find him working at the desk.

不管你何时去他那里,准会看到他在伏案工作。

**3** 在此类从句中,有时可省略动词 be.

29) Whatever your problems (are), they can't be more serious than mine.

不管你有什么样的问题,你们的问题都不会比我的问题更严重。

30) However great the pitfalls ( are ) , we must do our best to succeed.

不管潜在的危險有多大 , 我們都要盡最大的努力爭取成功。

## 53 When ,While ,Whether 与 If

1 When 通常引导时间状语从句 , 但有时也能引导让步状语从句 , 与 although 和 even though 的用法、语义差不多 , 只是语气稍轻。和一般表示时间关系的 when 从句相比 , 表示让步关系的 when 在主句与从句间有一种对比 , 因为让步从句又叫对比从句 ( Contrast clauses )。

1) The boy was restless when he should have listened to them carefully.

当时那男孩应当认真听他们的话 , 但他却坐立不安。

2) She stopped trying , when she might have succeeded next time.

她下一次说不定可以成功的 , 可她却不再尝试了。

3) You describe this policy as rigid and inflexible , when in fact it has been extremely flexible.

你把这项政策描绘成僵硬的 , 不能变通的 , 而事实上 , 它是极富弹性的。

4) They kept trying when they must have known it was hopeless.

他们一定知道成功是没有希望的 , 但仍不断地尝试。

5) The old man walks when he might ride.

这位老人本可以乘车的,但他却要步行。

- 6) Why do you keep on shouting, when you know it annoys us?

你既然知道会干扰我们,干嘛还要喊个不停呢?

- 2) While 引导让步状语从句,通常译作:“虽然……,但却,然而”等,这与表示对比关系的并列连词 while 颇为相似。它们之间的差别不在于形式而在于内容。就内容而言,此处的 while 从句与主句相比,显然只是一种陪衬,话语的重心在主句上。而用作并列连词的 while,前后是对等的,重点在于两种情况的对照。

- 7) While this is true of some, it is not true of all.

尽管这对一部分人是适用的,但并不适用于所有的人。

(全句的重心在主句部分: it is not true of all.)

- 8) The miser fasts while he might feast.

尽管可以大吃大喝,这个吝啬鬼却要禁食。

- 9) While I admit his good points, I can see his shortcomings.

尽管我承认他的优点,我也能看到他的缺点。

- 10) While I disapprove of what you say, I would defend your right to say it.

虽然我不同意你说的话,但我却要维护你说话的权利。

(该句主要突出维护对方说话权的决心。)

- 11) But while we cannot see any change in most of the stars, there are some in which we can see a change in

color and in brightness.

但是,尽管大部分恒星在我们看来都没有任何变化,我们仍然可以在某些恒星那里发现颜色与亮度的改变。

(出现在句首的并列连词 but 承接了上文的语气,它不只是与 while 从句有关,而是与整个句子都有关联。)

12) The boaster kills the absent lion while he dreads the mouse at his trembling feet. (A proverb)

吹牛的人尽管见了脚下的老鼠也会吓得瑟瑟发抖,却能杀死压根儿不在场的狮子。

**【注意】**

- A. 与并列连词 while 引导的并列句不同,while 引导的让步状语从句在句中的位置比较灵活,其位置不限于后置,即使出现在句尾,前边也极少以逗号与主句分隔,当然更重要的差别还在内容上。作为并列连词,while 强调的是对比,如: She is very tall, while her brother is very short(她很高,而她的兄弟却很矮),两个分句间并无主从关系,很难说哪一个更重要,事实上,将两个分句颠倒一下也无妨: Her brother is very short, while she is very tall。而引导让步状语从句的 while 就不同了,从句仅为一种铺垫,真正要传递的信息还在主句内。大家不妨将前边那些例句也颠倒一下,看看意思会有什么改变。
- B. 引导让步状语从句的 while 与引导时间状语从句的 while 在没有上下文的情况下有混淆的可能,从而产生歧义。
- a. While I was working in the laboratory, I didn't see much of him.

在实验室工作期间 ,我不常看到他。

(While I was working in the laboratory 被理解为时间状语从句。)

(或)虽然在实验室工作 ,我并不常看到他。

(While I was working in the laboratory 被理解为让步状语从句。)

**3** Whether 作为引导让步状语从句的连词 ,表示“无论如何 ,不管怎样”等意思。

13)Whether you like it or not ,you ll have to do it.

喜欢也罢不喜欢也罢 ,你都得干这桩事。

14)He s going to buy an apartment , whether he gets married or not.

不管结不结婚 ,他都准备买一个单元房。

15)Some children start with a huge appetite at birth and never lose it afterwards , whether they re well or sick ,calm or worried.

有的孩子一出生胃口就很好 ,而且会一直保留下去 ,不管是健康还是生病的时候 ,也不管是平静还是烦躁时 ,都是如此。

16)Whether you go abroad or whether you stay at home ,you could make it as long as you work hard.

不管是到国外去还是呆在国内 ,只要努力 ,你都可能获得成功。

(该句重复了 whether 一词 ,这是它不同于前边三例的地方。)

17) The moon is a moon still , whether it shines or not.

( A proverb )

不管亮不亮 ,月亮终归是月亮。

18) Whether you arrive tonight , tomorrow or whenever , you ll be welcome.

不管你今晚来 ,明天来 ,还是其他任何时间来 ,我们都欢迎。

4 If 也可以像 even if 或 whether 那样引导让步状语从句 ,但 if 的这种用法远不及 whether 或 even if 那样常见。

19) I ll finish this report if it kills me.

即使这样做会要我的命 ,我也要完成这个报告。

20) He s a pleasant , if awkward lad.

他虽笨拙 ,却是个讨人喜欢的小伙子。

21) If he is not smart , at least he is honest.

尽管他不聪明 ,但至少是老实的。

22) The profits , if a little lower than last year s , are still extremely healthy.

利润尽管比去年低一点 ,仍然相当可观。

**【注意】**

If 的这种功能有时会 and 引导条件状语从句的功能相混淆从而导致歧义。

Climbing up to the top of the mountain , they were very tired , if not exhausted.

爬上山顶后 ,他们如果说还没到精疲力竭的地步 ,也是很疲惫的。

(在 if not exhausted 中省略了与主句中的主语相同的



they 及动词 were 从句被视为条件状语从句。)

(或)爬上山顶后,他们虽然还没到精疲力竭的地步,也是很疲惫的。

(If not exhausted 被视为让步状语从句。)

## 54 Granted (that), Granting (that) 与 For all (that)

1 Grant 的原意是“给(姑且)承认”,其过去分词、现在分词都可单独或与 that 合作引导让步状语从句。两者可不加区别地交替使用。引导的从句多位于句首。

1) Granted (that) your English is the best in your class, you should not look down upon your classmates.  
即使你的英语在班上是最好的,你也不应瞧不起你的同学。

2) Granting that it is very, very cheap, I won't buy it.  
哪怕再便宜,我也不买。

3) Granted he has ability and interest, it does not mean he has time to do the job.  
即或他有能力也有兴趣,但那并不意味着他有干这项工作的时间。

2 For all (that) 与 in spite of the fact (that) 都是在介词短语的基础上产生的连词。

4) For all (that) he seems boring, I still like him.  
尽管他看上去有些乏味,我仍然喜欢他。

(此句也可换用 in spite of the fact (that), 意思不变。)

5) For all that he has shortcomings and faults , he is still regarded as a good student.

尽管他有缺点和过失 ,但他仍被认为是一个好学生。

6) In spite of the fact that he is looked down upon by many of his peers , he does not want to change his way of life.

尽管他的许多同龄人都瞧不起他 ,但他不想改变自己的生活方式。

3) Regardless of the fact that 与 in spite of the fact that 意思相同 ,两者引导的从句本来都应当算作 fact 的同位语从句 ,因为形式比较固定 ,又都有“让步”的含义 ,便渐渐作为一个整体进入了引导让步状语从句的连词的行列。

7) Regardless of the fact that he was born in a woodworker s family , Watson-Watt invented radar and was knighted in 1942.

尽管沃森·瓦特出生在一个木匠的家庭 ,但他发明了雷达 ,并于 1942 年被授予了爵士头衔。

8) Regardless of the fact that he suffered from AIDS , he insisted on working for other AIDS patients.

尽管他患有艾滋病 ,但他仍坚持为其他艾滋病病人工作。

9) In spite of the fact that she didn't have much schooling due to the Cultural Revolution , she began to study English at 24 and became a qualified English teacher a few years later.

尽管因为“文革”她没受过多少学校教育,但她 24 岁时开始学英语,并于几年后成了一位称职的英语教师。

4 Notwithstanding (that) ,assuming that 与 supposing that 等连词也都可以引导让步状语从句。

10) I would go notwithstanding (that) he advised me not to.

尽管他劝我不要去做,我还是要去做。

[Notwithstanding 通常用作介词或副词,如:They traveled on ,notwithstanding the snow. (尽管下雪他们仍继续赶路),Whatever you may say ,he will do it ,notwithstanding. (无论你说什么,他还是要做)。]

11) Assuming that he was in his right mind ,that was no excuse for his conduct.

即使他的想法正常,那也不能成为他采取这种行动的借口。

12) Supposing that he said so , he may not keep his promise.

即使他真的这么说了,他也不可能坚守自己的承诺。

## 55 让步状语从句中的省略

1 在 though ,although ,even if 等引导的让步状语从句中,主语与动词 be 经常省略。

1) Although the youngest of the team ,he captured three gold medals in the match.

虽然他是这个运动队中最年轻的一位,但他却夺得了三枚金牌。

(Although the youngest of the team = although he was the youngest of the team)

- 2) Read aloud, though alone, and read articulately and distinctly, as if you were reading in public, and on the most important occasion.

哪怕只有你一个人,你也要高声朗读,读时应吐字清晰,就像在最重要的场合当众朗读那样。

(Though alone = though you are alone)

- 3) Although seriously wounded, he managed to climb to the top of the mountain.

尽管身体严重受伤,他还是设法爬到了山顶。

(Although seriously wounded = although he was seriously wounded)

- 4) Their coming was very pleasant, though unexpected.

他们的到来是令人愉悦的,尽管出人意料。

(Though unexpected = though their coming was unexpected)

- 5) The relationship between our two countries is essentially good, even if progressing slowly.

我们两国之间的关系基本是好的,尽管发展比较慢。

(Even if progressing slowly = even if it is progressing slowly)

- 6) I enjoy sailing very much, even though in bad weather.

我很喜欢划船,哪怕在恶劣的天气情况下也是如此。

(Even though in bad weather = even though it is in bad weather)

2 在 however ,whatever ,no matter ( how ,what ,etc ,) 及 whether 等引导的让步状语从句中常有成分省略。

7) Each individual gain , however small , helps to raise the general level and makes the next step easier.

每一点收获 ,无论多么微不足道 ,都有助于提高整体水平并使下一步容易一些。

(However small = however small it is )

8) His visiting of the mainland is always welcome whatever the reason.

无论来访的理由是什么 ,他对大陆的访问总是受欢迎的。

(Whatever the reason = whatever the reason is )

9) Whatever the shape of a body , it is always possible to find out its volume.

不管一个物体的形状如何 ,总有可能算出它的体积。

(Whatever the shape of a body = whatever the shape of a body is )

10) As long as it can catch mice , it s a good cat , no matter how.

只要能抓住老鼠就是好猫 ,不管它怎么抓。

(No matter how = no matter how it catches mice )

11) Their opinions , whether right or wrong , should be taken into consideration.

他们的意见,无论对错,都应当考虑。

(Whether right or wrong = whether they are right or wrong)

- 12) Whether difficult or not, you must fulfill the task ahead of schedule.

无论困难与否,你都要提前完成任务。

(Whether difficult or not = whether it is difficult or not)

- 3** 在 whether... or 引出的让步状语从句中,有时可省略 whether.

- 13) English or non-English, you must master a foreign language.

英语也罢,非英语也罢,你必须掌握一门外语。

(English or non-English = whether it is English or non-English)

- 14) Believe it or not, we'll soon send an astronaut to the moon.

信不信由你,我们很快就要将一个宇航员送上月球了。

(Believe it or not = no matter whether you believe it or not)

- 15) Fine or rainy, I must go.

不管是天晴还是下雨,我都得走。

(Fine or rainy = whether it is fine or rainy)

## 从属连词与地点状语从句

### **56 Where ,Wherever ,Everywhere 与 No matter where**

1 Where 是引导地点状语从句的主要连词 ,其他引导地点状语从句的连词都多少与它有某种关系 ,或者说均属 where 系列。

1)Where there is smoke there is fire. (A proverb)

有烟的地方就有火。

2)Where there is a will there is a way. (A proverb)

有志者事竟成。

3)Young people should go where they are needed.

年轻人要去需要他们的地方。

4)What is a road ?It is stamped out where there are no roads but briars and brambles.

什么是路 ?就是从没路的地方践踏出来的 ,从只有荆棘的地方开辟出来的。

5)Man in society is not free where there is no law ;he is most free where he cooperates best with his equals in the making of laws.

在没有法律的地方 ,生活在社会中的人是不自由的 ;只有在他可以与别人平等密切合作来制定法律的地方 ,他才能获得最大的自由。

6) Where there's muck there's brass. (A proverb)

有污秽的地方就有金钱。

7) Cross the stream where it is shallowest. (A proverb)

过河应走水浅处。

8) "You stand right where you are," the boy ordered.

男孩子命令道，“你就站在原地。”

9) We can always find each star right where it was last year at the same time.

我们总能在前一年同一时间每一颗星所在的确切位置找到那些星。

(Right 作为副词在此修饰整个 where 从句。)

10) The city of Wuhan is located where the Yangtze and the Han River meet.

武汉市位于扬子江与汉江的交汇处。

11) You'd better make a note where you have any questions.

你最好在有问题的地方做一个记号。

**【注意】**

在表示地点的 where 从句前无须使用任何介词，因为充当状语时 where 从句本身相当于一个副词。

a. Where I live there are plenty of evergreen trees.

在我居住的地方有许多四季长青的树木。

Cf. In the place where I live there are plenty of trees.

(意思同上，但 where I live 为定语从句，修饰先行词



place。其中 ,where 为关系副词。由 where 引导的其他地点状语都可以作相应的转换。)

b. It s not decided yet where we shall go.

我们去哪儿尚未确定。

(Where we shall go 为名词性从句 ,在句中作主语。)

**2** Wherever 引导地点状语从句 ,意为“无论什么地方”。

12)Wherever they burn books they will also , in the end , burn human beings. (Heinrich Heine)

在任何一个焚书的地方终究也会焚人。

13)You may sit wherever you like.

你可以坐在你想坐的任何地方。

14)Wherever the river wound its way , the vegetation was fresh , green and luxuriant.

在河水流经的任何一个地方 ,植物都长得新鲜、葱绿 ,十分繁茂。

15)Do your duty wherever you may be.

不管你可能在什么地方 ,都应恪尽职守。

**3** Everywhere 引导地点状语从句 ,意为“任何地方”。

16)Everywhere they went , they were kindly received.

他们所到之处都受到了热诚的接待。

17)Everywhere they appeared there were flowers and o-vations.

不管他们在哪里露面 ,哪里都有鲜花与掌声。

18)Everywhere she went she was introduced as a hero.

不论她去哪里 ,人们介绍她时都称她为英雄。

4 在 where 与 wherever 引导的地点状语从句中可以省略像 it is 这样的成分。

19) Where (ver) possible, all moving parts should be tested.

只要可能,所有的活动部件都要检测。

(Where(ver) possible 是 where(ver) it is possible 的省略。)

20) Together with the Red Cross, these blood heroes are ensuring that the safest blood is readily available whenever and wherever needed.

这些献血的英雄们,和红十字会一道,在必要的情况下,无论何时何地均能提供最安全最快捷的血液保障。

(Whenever and wherever needed = whenever and wherever it is needed)

21) The river is smooth where deep.

河深水平静。

(Where deep = where it is deep)

22) Build mainly small projects, supplemented by medium and large ones where necessary and feasible.

主要修建小型工程,在必要和可行的情况下添加中型与大型工程。

(Where necessary and feasible = where it is necessary and feasible)

## 从属连词与方式状语从句

### 57 As 与 As...so

1 As 引导方式状语从句,常译作“像……一样”。用作方式状语的 as 从句通常位于主句之后。

1)The old woman killed the Japanese officer , as he had killed her husband.

这位老妇人就像那个日本军官杀她丈夫那样将那个日本军官给宰了。

(在没有上下文的情况下,也可将 as 从句看作原因状语从句。而将该句译为:因这个日本军官杀害了她的丈夫,这位老妇人便将他给杀了。)

2)Always do to the others as you would be done by. (A proverb)

己所不欲勿施于人。

(此句相当于:Always behave toward others as you would like to be treated. )

3)When in Rome ,do as the Romans do. (A proverb)

入乡随俗。

4)Do as most men do ,then most men will speak well of you. (A proverb)

只要多数人怎么做你就怎么做,多数人就会说你的好话。

5)She looked over her shoulder as her partner had

done.

她像她的同伴那样 ,也扭过头去张望。

- 6) Will you ever forgive me for speaking to you as I did just now ?

我刚才那样对你讲话你会原谅我吗 ?

(从句中以 did 代替 spoke 以避免重复。)

- 7) The sun shines on the planets , just as it does on the moon. The moon and the planets are lighted by the sun just as clouds and trees and sky on earth are lighted by the sun during the day.

太阳照在这些行星上 ,就像它照在月亮上一样。月亮和行星被太阳照亮的情况也和地球上云彩、树木与天空白天被太阳照亮的情况一模一样。

- 8) I did just as you told me.

我完全是按照你告诉我的方式做的。

**【注意】**

例 7 与例 8 中的 just 是 as 从句的修饰成分 ,强调“完全相同”或“一模一样”。有的语法学家将 just as 视为一体 ,就像 even if ,even though 被视为一体一样。

- 2 As... so 是引导方式状语的另一结构 ,as 意为“正如…… ; 就像”。在 as 前有时会用上副词 just 以加强语气。这样的 as 从句主要见于谚语或书面语言 ,往往兼具类比或比喻的意味。

- 9) As you sow , so shall you reap. (A proverb)

种瓜得瓜 种豆得豆。

- 10) As withered trees bear no fruit , so empty words have no value. ( A proverb )

枯树无果实 空话无价值。

(从句部分可以解释为“就像枯树不结果实一样”。汉语为了简炼而采用了意合法。)

- 11) As wave follows wave , so new men take old men s places. ( A proverb )

后浪推前浪 新人代旧人。

- 12) As laws are necessary that good manners may be preserved , so good manners are necessary that laws may be maintained.

正像只有法律才能保障良好的举止一样 ,也只有良好的举止才能维护法律。

- 13) Just as a man would not cherish living in a body other than his own , so do nations not like to live under other nations , however noble and great the latter may be. ( Mohandas Gandhi )

正如一个人不愿活在别人的躯体中一样 ,任何一个国家也不愿意受制于他国 ,不管后者如何高尚 ,如何伟大。

- 14) Just as a candle cannot burn without fire , men cannot live without a spiritual life.

正如蜡烛没有火不能燃烧一样 ,人没有精神生活也无法活。

(此句的主句部分省略了 so. )

- 15) Just as despair can come to one only from other

human beings , hope , too , can be given to one only  
by other human beings. ( Elie Wiesel )

正如一个人的失望情绪只能来自他人一样 , 希望也只能来自他人。

( 该句的主句部分省略了 so , 代替它的是另一个副词 too. )

16) As water is to fish , so air is to man. ( A proverb )

空气之于人 犹如水之于鱼。

17) She was the right type for it , just as I was the wrong  
type. ( J. B. Priestley : An Inspector Calls )

仿佛我不配穿那件衣服似的 , 而她却是适合穿那件衣服的人。

( 根据该剧的内容 , 我们知道此处的 it 指衣服。句中 as 的用法有些特殊 , 它似乎介于 as 引导的让步状语从句与 as . . . so . . . 结构之间。与前者的相似点在于形式 , 而与后者的相似点则在内容。 )

## 58 Like , The way , However 与 How

1 Like 通常用作介词 , 表示“像……”的意思 , 有时也可像 as 那样 , 接一个从句表示主句中行为的方式。这种用法最先见于美国口语 , 现在在英国英语中也开始流行起来 , 但仍不及 as 正规 , 也不及 as 使用的那么普遍。因此有的语法学家还会告诫人们不要将 like 用作连词。

1) How can you work like she does ?

你怎么可以像她那样工作呢 ?

2) My son walks to work every day like I have done.

我儿子就像我那样每天步行去上班。

3) Nobody loves you like I do , baby.

宝贝 ,没有谁像我这样爱你。

**2** 就像 the moment ,the minute 等名词可以引导时间状语从句一样 ,the way 也可以引导方式状语从句。该用法主要见于美国英语 ,它是 in the way 的缩略形式。

4) He plays mah-jong day and night ,the way his parents have done.

他像他的父母那样每天打麻将。

5) He tried to fix things the way his boss wanted.

他试图按照老板要求的样子来修理这些东西。

6) Sometimes we teach our children the way our parents have taught us.

有些时候 ,我们以我们的父母教育我们的方式去教育自己的孩子。

7) She s studying the same way her father used to.

她现在的学习方式与她父亲以往的学习方式一模一样。

(此句在 way 前加了修饰语 the same. )

8) I look at my books the way parents look at their children. ( Alex Hally )

我看待自己写的书就像父母看自己的孩子。

**3** However 引导方式状语从句 ,意为 in whatever way“ 无论以什么方式 ”。How 也有类似的用法。

9) However you use it , it won't break.

不论你如何使用 ,它都不会损坏。

10) You can go however you like.

你爱怎么去就怎么去。

11) In one's own home one can act however one wishes.

在自己家里 ,想怎么干就怎么干。

12) You can travel how you like.

你愿意怎么旅行就可以怎么旅行。

13) I shall wear my clothes how I like.

我要按我喜欢的方式着装。

## 59 As if 与 As though

1 As if 与 as though 的意义和用法均相同 ,常译为“仿佛……似的”“好像……似的” ;如认为从句的内容与事实相反或成为现实的可能性太小 ,动词用虚拟语气 ;如认为从句的内容是一种事实或者实现的可能性较大 ,则用直陈语气。但总的来说 ,使用虚拟语气的时候较多。Though 在古英语中等于 if ,这可能是 as though 与 as if 可以通用的重要原因。但实际使用时 ,as if 的出现频率要高一些。

1) He looks as if he were ill.

他看上去像是病了。

(从句中的 were 也可以换成 was。言者知道“他实际上没病”。)

Cf He looks as if he had been ill.



他看上去好像生过病。

(had been 是对过去情况的判断,属虚拟语气。)

He looks as if he is ill.

他看上去像是病了。

(言者认为“他生病”的可能性很大,故用直陈语气。)

When I met him yesterday, he looked as if he were ill.

昨天碰到他时,他看上去像是病了。(当时像是病了)

- 2) After the terrible natural disaster, the city of New Orleans looks as if it were a hell.

在这场可怕的自然灾害之后,新奥尔良市看上去就像地狱。

(新奥尔良市当然不是地狱,只是看上去像而已,故用虚拟语气。)

- 3) She behaves as though she were the Queen.

她那一举一动就像女王似的。

(她当然不是女王,故用 were。)

- 4) They talked as though the world were coming to an end.

听他们谈话的口气仿佛世界的末日就要来了。

(与事实不符,故用虚拟语气 were coming。)

- 5) He walks as though he were an old man.

他走起路来就像一个老人一样。

- 6) It feels as if summer is on the way.

感觉上好像夏天就要来了。

(此处用直陈语气,说话者可能有天气变得越来越热等实际证据。)

7) It would be an excellent rule to live each day as if we should die tomorrow.

将每一天都当作一生中的最后一天来过可能是一种极好的生活准则。

(As if we should die tomorrow 意为“仿佛第二天就会死去”。)

8) Behave towards everyone as if receiving a great guest.

(A proverb)

像对待贵宾一样的对待每一个人。

(As if 后省略了 you were.)

9) I acknowledge immense debt to the griot (tribal poets) of Africa—where today it is rightly said that when a griot dies, it is as if a library has burned to the ground. (Alex Halley)

我从非洲那些部落诗人那里获益良多,在那里,今天完全可以这么说,一个部落诗人的去世就像一个图书馆在大火中给夷为了平地一样。

(在《根》的作者看来,这些非洲部落诗人都是满腹诗书的人,他们在贫困落后的非洲是活的图书馆。因此,他们的去世便意味着一个图书馆的毁灭。这是作者在 as if 后使用直陈语气而非虚拟语气的原因。)

**【注意】**

A. 在美国英语中,有时用 like 代替 as if.

a. It looks like it's going to snow today.

今天看上去似乎要下雪。

b. She sat there eating cream cakes like there was no to-morrow.

她坐在那里猛吃奶油蛋糕好像没有明天似的。

c. He sat there smiling like it was his birthday.

他坐在那里傻笑 好像今天是他的生日似的。

B. As if 与 as though 有时可用以表示惊异、气愤等情感。

d. As if a girl of that sort would ever refuse money !  
(J. B. Priestley : An Inspector Calls)

好像那种女孩子竟会拒绝钞票一样！

(剧中的这句台词活脱脱地表现了一个贵夫人对生活在下层社会的女人的蔑视。省略的主句可能是 :It sounds. )

e. Don t think that you alone can do everything while others can do nothing , as if the earth would stop turning without you.

不要以为只你一个人什么都能干 ,别的人什么干不了 ,好像离开了你地球会停止转动似的。

C. As it were 是 as if it were so 的省略形式 ,意为“好比是 ,可谓 ,可以说”等 ,常被看作句中的插入成分而非从句。

f. I didn t , as it were , understand the question.

我好像不太理解这个问题。

D. 主句中的否定词可将整个从句作为否定的对象。

g. You certainly don t look as if there is something wrong.

你肯定看来不像有什么病。

## 60 方式状语从句中的省略

1 由 as 引导的方式状语从句中有时可以省略主语、动词 be ,以及主句谓语相同的谓语动词。

1) He , as always , is regarded as a good husband in other people s eyes.

他如同一直以来的那样 在其他人的眼中是一个好丈夫。

(As always = as he is always)

2) The sun shone brightly as before.

太阳像往常一样明亮地照耀着。

(As before = as it shone before)

3) Everything turned out well as expected.

一切都如同人们期待的那样顺利。

(As expected = as it had been expected)

4) You should do it as required.

你应当按要求做。

(As required = as you are required)

5) They started early as usual.

他们像往常一样早早就动身了。

(As usual = as is usual with them. 如将 as usual 看作一个固定的表达方式 那么 as 的作用便相当于一个介词了。)

6) The building shook as with an earthquake.

这幢建筑物就像在地震中一样摇晃起来了。

(As with an earthquake = as it would shake with an earthquake)

7) He spoke as follows.

他讲了如下的话。

(从句主语省略 as follows = as it follows. As follows 现已成为一个固定的表达方式。)

2 由 as if 与 as though 引导的方式状语从句有时也可以压缩为“连词加形容词(分词 不定式短语)等。

8) The little boy looks as if afraid of nothing.

这个小男孩看上去好像什么都不怕。

(连词加形容词短语 ,as if afraid of nothing = as if he were afraid of nothing. )

9) He dashed out of the room as if angry.

他冲出了房间 ,好像生了气似的。

(连词加形容词 as if angry = as if he were angry. )

10) The old woman opened her lips as though to say something.

老妇人张着嘴仿佛有什么话要说似的。

(连词加不定式短语 ,as though to say something = as though she were going to say something. )

11) He was walking up and down in the woods as though in search of something.

他在林中来回地走 ,仿佛在寻找什么东西似的。

(连词加介词短语 ,as though in search of something = as though he were in search of something. )

## 从属连词与比较状语从句

### 61 More lucky than clever 与 No more fish than a horse

1 Than 是引导比较状语从句的主要连词。它与形容词和副词的比较级密切相关。Than 后可接名词短语,也可接从句(包括省略了某些成分的从句)。Than 从句内多有省略。当 than 后仅接名词短语或代词的宾格形式时,than 常被看作介词。

1) Blood is thicker than water . (A proverb)

血浓于水。

[如果将 than 看作介词,water 则为介词宾语;如果将 than 看作连词,那么 water 似乎省略了 is (thick).]

2) Her husband is certainly younger than her.

她丈夫肯定比她年轻。

[如果在 than 后单独使用人称代词,最好用它的宾格形式,尽管该句 than 后应接 she is (young)。传统语法在这种情况下要求人们用主格 she,但现在仍用 she 就显得有些古板了。当 than 后不管三七二十一都用代词的宾格形式时,than 实际上已转化成了介词。]

3) I know her husband much better than her.

我对她丈夫的了解远胜于对她的了解。

或:我对她丈夫的了解远胜于她对丈夫的了解。

(由于在 than 后统一用宾格形式便导致了歧义,于是此句有了两种截然不同的解释。根据前一种解释,than her 应理解为 than I know her;根据后一种解释,than her 应理解为 than she knows her husband.)

4) I know her husband much better than she does.

我比她更了解她的丈夫。

(Does 代替前边已出现了的 knows 以避免重复。)

5) I am happier than I have ever been.

我从来没像现在这样快乐。

(从句内似乎省略了表语 happy,但实际上谁也不会将这个 happy 写出来。)

6) They had to work harder than expected.

他们必须比原先指望他们的更卖力地干。

(Than expected 是 than they had been expected 的省略形式。如要表示“比他们自己原先指望的更卖力地干”,than 后便不能省略主语,正确的说法是:They had to work harder than they had expected.)

7) I felt more miserable than I can say.

我的悲哀无以言表。

(Than 从句中省略 that I felt.)

8) This year her son studies harder than last year.

今年她儿子学习比去年努力。

(Last year 虽为名词短语,但在句中充当状语成分。从句中省略了 he did.)

9) This morning I arrived at the school earlier than usual.

今天早上我到学校时比平时早了一些。

(Than usual 意为 than it was usual. Earlier 是副词 early 的比较级形式。)

10) He studies harder than any other student in his class.

在学习上,他比班上其他任何一个学生都要努力。

Cf He studies the hardest in his class.

他在班上学习最努力。

(To study harder than any other 实际上相当于 to study the hardest. )

11) He loves his farm more than anything—more than Mum and me. But I admire him. (Richard Musman : Bush Fire)

他爱农场胜过一切,甚至超出了他对母亲和我的爱。但我仍然佩服他。

(两个 than 从句中均省略了 he loves. )

12) Actions speak louder than words. (A proverb)

事实胜于雄辩。

13) Half a loaf is better than no bread. (A proverb)

有半条面包总比没有面包好。

14) Better be a bird in the wood than one in the cage.

(A proverb)

宁为林中鸟,不做笼中禽。



[该句可理解为 :It s better to be a bird in the wood than to be a bird in the cage. 类似的谚语还有 :Better be a free bird than a captive king (宁为自由鸟 ,不做被俘王) ,Better be the head of a dog than the tail of a lion (宁做鸡头 ,不做凤尾) ,Better give the wool than the sheep (宁给毛 不给羊) ,Better a living dog than a dead lion (好死不如赖活) 。 ]

**【注意】**

在不会产生歧义的前提下 ,有时可省略整个 than 从句。

- a. This is as good as that , if not better .

这个比那个如果不是更好 ,也是一样好的。

(Better 后省略了 than that. )

- b. Please give me a smaller one.

请给我一个小点儿的。

(被比较的对象通过谈话的背景不难得知。)

- c. It s colder today.

今天冷一些。

(被省略的部分可能是 than it was yesterday. )

- d. To the south and west the hills were less high and the trees were less thick and tall. (Richard Musman : Bush Fire)

在南边与西边 ,山没那么高 ,树也没那么密 ,没那么高。

(“Less + 形容词或副词原级 + than 从句”意为“不及…… 不如……”等。后一个 less 兼顾 thick 与 tall 两个

形容词。但此处的 than 从句已省略。)

2 在 than 的前边可以使用一个带有比较级修饰成分的名词。

15) She owns a larger collection of coins than anyone else I have ever met.

她比我知道的其他任何一个人收集的硬币都多。

Cf :Her collection of coins is larger than that of any other person I have ever known.

(意思基本相同,但比较级形容词 larger 现为表语,直接位于连词 than 前。)

16) You can hardly find a more responsible teacher than he is.

你很难找到一个比他更负责的老师。

Cf :You can hardly find a teacher more responsible than he is.

(意思相同。比较级形容词和 than 从句一道修饰名词 a teacher。此结构类似于定语从句 who is more responsible than he is. )

3 “More(或 less) + 名词 + than + 另一个名词”与“rather than”可相互转化,表示“与其说……不如说”或“是……而不是”等意思。

17) I am more engineer than soldier. The whole thing is more an engineering job than conquest. ( John Steinbeck :The Moon Is Down )

我与其说是一个兵,还不如说是一个工程师。这一切不像是

在征服 ,倒更像一项工程。

(前一句的名词前也可添加不定冠词 : I am more an engineer than a soldier. )

Cf I am an engineer rather than a soldier. The whole thing is an engineering job rather than conquest.

18) They were less a formal team than a guerrilla band.

他们与其说是正规军 ,不如说是游击队。

(该句以 less 替换 more 意思正好相反。)

Cf : They were more a guerrilla band than a formal team.

They were a guerrilla band rather than a formal team.

19) A whale is no more a fish than a horse.

鲸并不比马更像鱼。(或 :马不是鱼 ,鲸同样不是鱼。)

[Horse 后显然省略了 is ( a fish )。No more. . . than 强调两者一样 ,都不是..... ]

20) Human is no less an animal than a monkey is.

人和猴一样都是动物。

(No less. . . than 表示两者相同 ,“都是.....”)

21) A man has no more right to say an uncivil thing than to act one ; no more right to say a rude thing to another than to knock him down.

一个人无权讲不文明的话 ,正如他无权干无礼的事一样 ;他无权对旁人说粗话 ,就像他无权将别人打倒在地一样。

22) The Indians felt that they had no more right to sell

the land than they had to sell the sky. ( Lewis Paul Todd and Merle Curti : Rise of the American Nation )

这些印第安人觉得无权出卖土地 ,就像他们无权出卖天空一样。

(不言而喻 ,天空是无法出卖的。将出卖土地的权力与出卖天空的权力相提并论 ,目的在于说明土地是绝对不可以出卖的。)

23) His works seem more likely a collection of separate scenes than a single novel.

他的作品与其说是一部整本小说 ,倒不如说是一段段情节的汇集。

24) The greatness of a people is no more determined by their number than the greatness of a man is determined by his height.

一个民族的伟大不决定于其人口的多少 ,正如一个人的伟大不决定于他的身长。

4 “More (或 less) of a + 名词 + than 从句”是引导比较状语从句的又一种方式。

25) He is more of a fool than I thought.

他比我以前想象的还要蠢。

(Than 从句后省略了 he was. More of a fool 相当于 more foolish. )

26) To my surprise , his wife is less of a fool than he is .

令我吃惊的是 ,他老婆并不像他那样蠢。

(Less of a fool 相当于 less foolish. )

- 5 Than 从句通常在两个不同的人或事物间就同一方面作比较,如努力程度,愚蠢程度,高矮胖瘦等,但间或也可就同一人或同一物的两个不同方面作比较。

27) The windows are much taller than they are wide.

这些窗户的高度要比它们的宽度超出许多。

或译作 这些窗子的高度比宽度要大。

(这里比较的是同一物的两个方面:高的程度与宽的程度。)

28) At the news I was more angry than miserable.

听到这个消息我与其说是悲哀不如说是愤怒。

(悲哀与愤怒是两种不同的心境,这里比较的只是它们的程度。Angry 的比较级是 angrier,但在这种特定的句型中却要用 more angry,不能用 angrier。这一种 more... than 结构也可以和 rather than 结构相互转化,同样可译为“与其说……不如说”或“是……而不是”。)

Cf: At the news I was angry rather than miserable.

(意思基本相同。)

29) As his caseload grew, that work was less often frightening than sad.

随着就诊人数的增加,那项工作往往不再令人生畏,而是叫人伤心了。

Cf: As his caseload grew, that work was more often sad than frightening.

As his caseload grew, that work was often sad rather than frightening.

30) This guy is more lucky than clever.

这家伙是走运而不是聪明。

(同例 28 ,more lucky 不得以 luckier 替代。)

31) He was less hurt than frightened.

他与其说受伤了不如说受惊了。

(此处的两个过去分词显然带有形容词的特性。)

6) Than 从句间或也可用于不同的人或物间 不同方面的比较。

32) Mary is cleverer than her sister is pretty.

玛丽聪明 而她的妹妹却很漂亮。

7) More than... 有时相当于 not only 即“不仅仅”。

33) Such work requires more than indomitable will.

这项工作不仅仅需要坚忍不拔的意志。

34) Jobs mean more than money.

工作不仅仅意味着钱。

35) Well-being can mean more than just money.

健康快乐可能不仅仅意味着金钱。

(在这类句子中 ,more than 绝对不能分开 ,谓语动词常用 mean. )

## 62 As...as 与 Not so...as

1) As...as 引导比较状语从句 ,常译作“像……一样”。与之相关的形容词或副词要用原级 不能用比较级。由第二个 as 引导的从句为比较状语从句。

1) Some radio telescopes are as big as a football field.

有些射电望远镜有足球场那么大。

2) The migrant worker is as industrious and conscientious as any in the factory, but his wages are much lower.

这个民工勤奋认真不亚于厂内任何一个人,但他的收入却比别人低许多。

(前一个 as 后有两个形容词。)

3) She is as good a teacher as any student could wish for.

学生不能指望有比她更好的老师了。

(因为第一个 as 后要紧接形容词,故不定冠词 a 得移到名词前。试比较 a good teacher 与 as good a teacher. 同一意思也可用形容词最高级来表示: She is the best teacher the students could wish for.)

4) This is as difficult a problem as you are likely to meet.

这是你们有可能碰到的那种难题。

5) She was as fine a girl as need be.

她是一个要多么好就多么好的姑娘。

(可将“as + 形容词 + as need be”看作一个固定的结构。)

6) Be as quick as ever you can.

你能够多快就多快。

7) His intention is as plain as plain can be.

他的动机再明显不过了。

(As plain as plain can be 相当于 very plain. 类似的结构

有 as wise as wise can be ,as bad as bad can be ,as proud as proud can be ,其中第一个 as 可以省略。)

- 8) She wanted to talk to someone as badly as I did.

她和我一样 急于想找某个人谈一谈。

(从句中以 did 代替 wanted to talk 以避免重复。)

- 9) The receiver is as bad as the thief. (A proverb)

窝家跟贼一样坏。

- 10) Old as I am , I could see almost as well at night as I could in sunlight.

尽管老了 ,我夜里看东西几乎仍和大白天看东西一样(清楚)。

(As I could in sunlight 是比较状语从句 ,as well 前加了修饰成分 almost。此外 ,像 just ,at least ,(not)nearly almost ,every bit ,exactly 等也可以充当 as. . . as 结构的修饰成分。)

- 11) This computer game is three times as popular with adults as with children.

这种计算机游戏受欢迎的程度 ,成人是儿童的三倍。

(As. . . as 结构前可用 twice ,three times 或 one sixth 等表示倍数的词修饰。)

- 12) All of a sudden , the stick in his hand has become one fifth as long as that one on the table.

突然间 ,他手中那根棍子的长度就变得只有桌上那根棍子的五分之一了。



[As that one on the table (is)是比较状语从句。]

- 13) There are forty times as many stars in the Milky Way as there are people on the whole earth.

银河系中星星的数目是地球上人的数目的四十倍。

- 14) She's forty, and as tough and as sour as this bit of lemon peel.

她已年届四十,其性格之倔犟乖戾有如这块柠檬皮。

(该句中有三个 as,前两个 as 为并列结构,最后一个 as 引导比较状语从句。)

- 15) I walked across the polished floor as slowly and as silently as I could. (V. S. Naipaul: The Mourners)

我尽可能慢,尽可能不发出任何声响地从擦得很光的地板上走过。

(与上一例句相同,as slowly and as silently 为并列结构。)

- 16) They are as tall as a tree and as big round as a church.

他们身体高大如树,腰围粗壮如教堂。

(该句有两套 as...as 结构,中间以 and 连接。)

- 17) I am as clever as he / him.

我和他一样聪明。

(As 后如为人称代词,既可用该代词的主格形式,如 he,也可用该代词的宾格形式,如 him,但主格形式显然更正规一些。)

- 2 As...as... 的否定形式是 not as...as... 或 not so...

as。早些年,语法学家们要求人们在这种情况下一定要用后者,但现在使用 not as... as... 结构的已经相当普遍。它似乎比 not so... as... 结构更自然一些。谚语是一个例外,它更多地保留了英语过去的语法特征。

18) The boy is not as smart as he appears to be.

这男孩并不像他看上去的那么聪明。

Cf: The boy is not so smart as he appears to be.

(意思基本相同。)

19) The moon today is not as bright as yesterday.

今天的月亮不像昨天的月亮那么明亮。

(As yesterday 中省略了 it was. )

20) Sometimes there isn't as much difference as you think (J. B. Priestley: *An Inspector Calls*)

有时它们之间的差别并不像你想象的那么大。

21) The devil is not so black as he is painted. (A proverb)

魔鬼并不像他被人画的那么黑。

22) Nothing is so certain as the unexpected. (A proverb)

没有一件事像意外一样确定。/ 天有不测风云。

(该谚语的否定部分表现在主语 nothing 上。)

23) Nothing is given so freely as advice. (A proverb)

没有比给别人劝告更方便的事了。

24) Never has my interest in the study of English run so

high as it does today.

我对英语学习的兴趣从来没有像今天这样高过。

- 3 在比较的对象一目了然的情况下, as...as 结构中的第二个 as 有时可以省略。

25) I am less clever than my brother, but I study just as hard.

我没我兄弟聪明,但我学习和他一样努力。

(As hard 后省略了 as he does.)

26) "It's still snowing," she said, "but not as hard."

她说,“雪还在下,但已经不像早些时候那么大了。”

[As hard 后省略了 as it was (snowing) before.]

27) He runs swiftly enough, but I can run as swiftly.

他跑得足够快了,但我可以跑得和他一样快。

(As swiftly 后省略了 as he does.)

28) This basketball player is two meters tall and his twin brother is as tall.

这个篮球运动员有两米高,他的双胞胎兄弟和他一样高。

(在 as tall 后省略了 as he is.)

29) Our head cook, Mr. Sun, was a culinary artist, said to be one of the best in Beijing. Other embassies weren't as lucky. (George Bush: Looking Forward)

我们的主厨孙先生是一个烹饪艺术家,据说是北京最好的烹饪大师之一。而其他的使馆就没我们那么幸运了。

30) Metal that has been annealed is soft but does not break

as easily.

经过退火的金属变软了,但不像那样容易碎裂。

(从上文中不难找回被省略的从句 as metal that is heated and then cooled very quickly. 文章的前半部分描述了这种金属 break easily 的特性。)

- 4 在非正式的文体,特别是美国英语中,as...as 结构中的第一个 as 有时也可以省略。

31) He's hard as nails.

他身体结实。(或译为“他冷酷无情”。)

(习语 as hard as nails 有两解,此处省略了第一个 as。)

- 5 As...as 结构有时也可用于同一人或物两种不同性质或特征的比较。因比较的只是程度方面,因此常译为“既……又……”。

32) Michael is as stupid as he is stubborn.

迈克既固执又愚蠢。

(相当于 He is stubborn. He is equally stupid. “愚蠢”和“固执”的程度相同。)

33) I'm worn down with labors that are as fruitless to you as they are troublesome to me.

那些既令我麻烦不堪又对你们无益的劳作把我累坏了。

34) He is as superstitious as he is wicked.

他既邪恶又迷信。

- 6 As...as 结构有时可用于两者间不同性状的比较,而这两种性状往往是对立的。

35) He was as popular as his father was not.

他为人们所喜爱,而他的父亲却不招人喜欢。

(此处比较的实际上是“喜欢”与“不喜欢”的程度。)

36) He is as quick as you are slow.

他动作敏捷,而你却动作迟缓。

**【注意】**

A. 在下列句中的 as many, so many 后很难说省略了什么,通常人们将它们译作“同数”,究竟同哪一个数要看上下文。

a. Suddenly, he made contact with the enemy, and won four battles in as many days. (Anthony Corley: The True Story of Napoleon)

突然,他与敌人间发生了遭遇战,并在四天内接连赢了四仗。

(As many days 根据上文的 four battles 应理解为 four days.)

b. He made five mistakes in as many lines.

他在五行中就出了五个错误。

c. The fifty workers work as so many giants.

那五十个工人干起活来就像五十个巨人。

B. 英语中有不少类似于 as cool as a cucumber(泰然自若)这样的习语,如 as happy as a lark(欢乐无比), as old as the hills(年代久远), as black as the ace of spades(漆黑一团)。这些习语在现在看来,已经显得过于老套了。比喻贵在创新,学习者应了解这些习语的含义,但不宜使用。

## 63 The more... the more 与 The more... the less

1 The more... the more 是一种特殊的比较结构,前一个 the more... 是从句,后一个 the more... 为主句。More 前的两个 the 均为副词而非定冠词,more 代表形容词或副词比较级。该结构常被译为“越……越……”。该句型中动词多用现在时或过去时,从句与主句部分都可以省略若干成分,只要不造成误解,语句越简练,越有力量。

1) The more learned a man is, the more modest he is.

一个人越有学问越谦虚。

(比较的部分分别在从句与主句中充当表语。)

2) The earlier you start, the sooner you'll finish it.

你开始得越早,完成得越快。

(比较的部分为状语。)

3) The more, the better.

越多越好,多多益善。

4) The greater the danger the more must we drive ahead.

越是艰险越向前。

(从句中省略了 is。The greater 为从句中的表语,the more 为主句中的状语部分。因为强调部分的提前,主句中出现了部分倒装,must 被调到主语 we 前。)

5) The longer the heated metal takes to cool slowly, the softer it becomes.

加热过的金属慢冷却所需的时间越长,就变得越软。

6) The harder he worked, the more he got.

他工作越努力,收获也越大。

(副词比较级前的 the 在很多场合均可省略,但在本句型中却不能省略,主句中的 the more 为宾语。)

**2** 英文中有不少套用 the more... the more 结构的谚语。

7) The fairer the paper, the fouler the blot. (A proverb)  
纸愈白,污愈显。

8) The nearer one comes to the bone, the sweeter is the meat. (A proverb)  
越接近骨头的肉越香。

9) The nearer the church, the farther from God. (A proverb)  
离教堂越近离上帝越远。

10) The older the goose, the harder to pluck. (A proverb)  
年纪越大越吝啬。  
(字面的意义是:鹅越老,毛越难拔: The older the goose is, the harder it is to pluck.)

11) The more the merrier. (A proverb)  
朋友多,乐呵呵。  
(主句与从句都很短,读时可不作停顿,写时可省略之间的逗号。该句似乎是在下边这个句子的基础上省略若干成分后形成的: The more people there are, the merrier the company will be.)

12) The deeper the sweeter.

最底层的蜜越甜。

- 13) The more you have , the more you want. ( A proverb )

人心难得足 ,有了还想有。 / 人心不足蛇吞象。

- 14) The more cost , the more honor. ( A proverb )

价值越大越珍贵。

- 15) The higher up , the greater the fall. ( A proverb )

爬得越高跌得越惨。

- 16) The higher the ape goes , the more he shows his tail.

( A proverb )

猴子爬得越高 ,尾巴露得越多。 / 官位爬得越高 ,缺点显得越明。

- 17) The easier and more colloquial are the words used in the expression , and the more concretely it is expressed , the better ( it is ).

用以表达的词汇越简单、越口语化、越具体 就越好。

( The easier and more colloquial 为并列成分 ,而由它们引导的从句又以 and 为连词与另一分句 the more concretely it is expressed 并列。余下的部分 ,即 the better ( it is ) , 为主句。)

- 3** 若表示“越……越不……” ,则用 the more... the less 结构。

- 18) The more he flatters her , the less she likes him.

他越是奉承她 ,她越不喜欢他。

- 19) The more haste , the less speed. ( A proverb )



欲速则不达。

20) The more he says , the less he does.

他说的越多 ,做的越少。

4 若表示“越不……就越……” ,则用 the less... the more 结构。

21) The less she worried the better she worked.

她越少担心 ,工作就做得越好。

22) The less said about it , the better .

少说为佳。

23) If you want to keep fit as much as possible , then the less you think about it , the better .

如果你想尽可能保持健康 ,那么你对健康考虑得越少越好。

(这是一个含有条件状语从句的复合句 ,主句本身又是一个主从复合句 ,将 the less... the better 用作主句 ,这种情况并不多见。)

## 64 Except ( that ) ,Excepting that ,With the exception that 与 But ( that )

由这一组词引出的状语从句被有的语法学家称为“除外状语从句” ,因为它们都有“除……之外”的含义 ,为了简便起见 ,我们还是将它们纳入了比较状语从句的范畴 ,因为它们也不同程度的含有比较与对照的意思。

1) I know nothing except that they intend to emigrate to Canada.

除了知道他们想移居加拿大以外 ,别的我一概不知。

- 2) His account is correct , except that some details are omitted.

除了某些细节未提到外 ,他的叙述总的来说是正确的。

- 3) I enjoyed the music except that the hall was cold.

我很欣赏那场音乐会 ,只是大厅里冷了点。

- 4) The twin brothers look very much alike , excepting that the younger one seems a little bit taller.

这对双胞胎兄弟很相像 ,只是弟弟看上去比哥哥略高一点。

- 5) The working principles of the two machines are the same , with the exception that one is somewhat more efficient than the other.

这两台机器的工作原理完全相同 ,只是其中一台比另一台的效率略高一点。

- 6) We ask nothing from you but that you should give a clear statement of the facts.

除了要你将事实清清楚楚地讲出来之外 ,我们对你别无所求。

- 7) A similar timetable has been adopted save that the morning break is shorter.

已采用大体相同的时间表 ,只是早上的休息时间短了些。

- 8) I agree with you , save that you've got one or two facts wrong.

你有一两点是错的 ,除此之外 ,我同意你的观点。

## 连词与名词性从句

### 65 That ,Whether ,If 与主语从句

1 主语从句通常由从属连词 that 引导 ,也可由 what ,who , whose ,which ,whichever 等代词或连接代词 ,以及 where , when ,how ,why 等连接副词引导。与其他引导词不同的地方在于 ,that 仅起连接作用 ,本身并不担当句中的任何成分 ,也没有任何词汇意义。

1) That you should say so surprises me.

你竟然这么说令我很吃惊。

2) That it will rain seems likely.

天要下雨看来是可能的。

3) That he will succeed is certain.

他将成功是确定无疑的。

(That 在从句中不担任任何语法成分 ,汉译时被忽略。)

Cf :What he said was true.

他所说的是实话。

(What 在从句中充当宾语 ,整个从句通常被译为“所”字句。)

When I shall return is uncertain.

我何时回来尚不确定。

(When 在从句中充当状语 ,when 从句常译作“……的时间”。)

Why he left remains a mystery.

他离开的原因一直是一个谜。

(Why 在从句中充当状语 ,why 从句常译作“……的原因”。)

- 2) 由 that 引导的主语从句位于句首的情况并不多 ,通常只是为了强调或谓语部分较长时才这么用。一般情况下 ,that 从句可借助于形式主语或称先行主语 it 而后置。

4) It surprises me that you should say so.

(同例 1。)

5) It seems likely that it will rain.

(同例 2。)

6) It is certain that he will succeed.

(同例 3。)

7) It is strange that she should have failed to see her own shortcomings.

奇怪的是她竟然没有看出自己的缺点。

(此句如将 that 从句提到句首便显得极不自然 ,因为主语部分太长 ,摆到句首会给人头重脚轻的感觉。)

8) It is rumored that there will be another pay rise for the civil servant early next year.

传说明年年初公务员又要加一次薪。

9) It never occurred to me that he should become a corrupt officer.

我从没想到他竟然会成为一个腐败的官僚。

10) But it is also true that , when the Revolution began ,

some wealthy southern families remained loyal to England , as did some wealthy people in the New England and Middle Colonies.

但是下列情况也是事实 ,革命开始后 ,一些富有的南方家庭继续效忠于英国 ,就像新英格兰与中部殖民地的那些有钱人一样。

(句中的黑体部分是主语从句 ,句首的 it 为形式主语。That 从句本身也是一个主从复合句 ,它含有两个状语从句 ,一个是 when 引导的时间状语从句 ,一个是由 as 引导的方式状语从句。像这样复杂的句子如果不采用“it is + 形容词 + that 从句”的话简直不可思议。)

- 3** 位于句首的 that 从句不得省略 that ,但前有形式主语 it 的 that 从句在口语中可以省略 that.

11) It is not true (that )he has resigned.

他已辞职的消息不真实。

Cf :That he has resigned is not true.

(That 不得省略。)

12) It seems inconceivable ( that ) the American pilot could have survived the crash.

那位美国飞行员在飞机坠毁之后居然还活着 ,这看来是不可思议的。

- 4** Whether 是另一个可以引出主语从句的连词。Whether 常译作“是否” ,和由 that 引出的主语从句一样 ,由 whether 引导的主语从句也可借助形式主语 it 而后置。

13) Whether it is true (or not) is still unknown.

这件事是真的还是假的仍不清楚。

(在两种可能性刚好相反,非此即彼时,whether 从句内的 or not 属于冗余信息,可以去掉。)

14) Whether he will come or not remains undecided.

他是否会来仍然没有确定。

(Or not 也可紧随 whether 之后,写成 whether or not he will come. )

15) Whether he comes himself or sends a substitute is immaterial.

是他亲自来还是派代表来并不重要。

(这里的 or sends a substitute 显然不能省略,因为至少还有一种可能,即两者都不来。)

Cf: It is immaterial whether he comes himself or sends a substitute.

(同例 15,但此处借助形式主语 it 将 whether 从句后置了。)

16) It is doubtful whether / if the President knows the details of the plan.

总统是否了解计划的细节值得怀疑。

17) It is doubtful if any man has ever written a report on such an important subject so quickly, or with so little efforts.

有没有人在这么短的时间内,花这么少的气力,能就如此重

要的问题写出一份报告来是令人怀疑的。

【注意】

主语或主语从句多出现在句首,这对不能在句首出现的 if 从句而言是一个很大的限制。因此,只有在例 16 与例 17 那样的情形才能以 if 替换 whether。关于 if 与 whether 的其他差别,详见下节“*That, Whether, If* 与宾语从句”。

## 66 *That, Whether, If* 与宾语从句

1 宾语从句属于名词性从句。它通常由连词 *that* 或连接代词(如 *who, what*)、连接副词(如 *where, why*)以及关系代词 *what* 等引导。与引导主语从句的 *that* 一样,引导宾语从句的 *that* 也只起连词作用,本身并不担任从句中的任何语法成分,也没有任何词汇意义。

1) *She denied that she had written the letter.*

她否认(她)写过这封信。

2) *I suggested that he make a list of things that he would have to do.*

我建议他将非做不可的事列一个清单。

(黑体部分为宾语从句,由 *that* 引导。因为 *suggest* 的原因,从句用了虚拟语气。后一个 *that* 引导定语从句修饰先行词 *things*。)

3) *I'm afraid that it will rain tomorrow.*

恐怕明天会下雨。

[*Afraid* 本为形容词,其后的 *that* 从句到底算状语从句还是

宾语从句尚存争议,此处将其作为宾语从句看待,因 I'm afraid 与 I fear 意义用法均相似。To be sure that (= know for sure) to be confident that (= believe that)等也可以作类似处理。]

- 4) He told his students that reading is essential in the study of English.

他告诉学生们,英语学习中阅读是关键。

(That 从句前还有一个间接宾语 his students.)

- 5) For a long time people believed that the stars never changed, that they had remained the same ever since the beginning of the world.

有很长一段时间人们相信恒星是不变的,自有宇宙以来它们始终一成不变。

(该句中有两个并列的宾语从句,分别由 that 引导。在这种情况下,即使省略了第一个 that,第二个 that 也需保留。)

- 6) Under questioning he revealed that the murder had occurred seventeen years earlier and that the murderer had remained unmolested in the village all the time.

(Peter F. Drucker: The Surprising Seventies)

经过询问,他透露说,谋杀发生在十七年前,而且谋杀者一直住在村子里没有受到任何打扰。

(两宾语从句由 and 连接。)

- 7) Do you understand what he said just now?

你听懂了他刚才说的话吗?



(从句由关系代词 what 引导 ,what 除了起连接作用外 ,还在从句中扮演宾语的角色。)

- 8) I don't know how the thief got into the office last night.

我不知道小偷昨晚是怎么进到办公室来的。

(从句由连接副词 how 引导 ,how 意为“如何”。除连接从句与主句外 ,how 在从句中还扮演状语的角色。)

- 2 常接 that 从句的动词有 :add (补充说) ,doubt ,reply ,admit ,estimate ,report ,agree ,explain ,reveal ,announce ,answer ,argue ,boast ,claim ,comment ,complain ,confirm ,consider ,deny ,fear ,feel ,insist (坚持说) ,mention ,observe (评论说) ,persuade ,propose ,remark ,repeat ,reply ,report ,say ,state ,suggest ,suppose ,tell ,think ,understand ,warn.

- 9) He added that he couldn't rely on anybody else to solve the problem but himself.

他补充说 ,他除了自己不能依赖其他任何人来解决这个问题。

- 10) The customer complained that the book he bought from the supermarket was a pirated copy.

顾客抱怨说他从这家超市买的书是盗版的。

(The book 后引导定语从句的关系代词 that 被省略了。)

- 3 既能接 that 从句 ,也能接动词不定式的动词有 :decide ,expect ,guarantee ,hope ,promise ,swear ,threaten.

11) She swore by her honor that she would never tell anybody about this.

她以自己的名誉发誓决不将此事告诉任何人。

12) He threatened that he would sue the company if the problem couldn't be properly solved.

他威胁说，如果问题得不到合理解决他要告这家公司。

Cf: He threatened to sue the company if the problem couldn't be properly solved.

(意思同上。但该句以不定式取代了宾语从句。)

13) The general manager promised that he would pay his staff liberally.

总经理答应给员工优厚的报酬。

Cf: The general manager promised to pay his staff liberally.

4 常接 if 从句或 whether 从句的动词有: ask, say, know, see, remember.

14) He asks us if we are willing to have a tour in South Korea.

他问我们是否愿意去韩国旅游。

(Us 为间接宾语, if 从句为直接宾语。此处的 if 可以 whether 替换。)

15) He didn't remember whether he had said anything like this.

他不记得他是否说过类似这样的话。

(可换用 if. )

- 16) I really don't know whether or not you'll get the ticket this afternoon.

我真的不知道你下午能否拿到票。

(不可换用 if. )

- 17) Whether she is married I don't know.

我不知道她是否结婚。

(Whether 从句虽在句首,但仍是宾语从句。)

- 18) I worry about whether I hurt her feelings.

我担心是否伤害了她的感情。

(不可换用 if. )

- 19) It depends on whether the Korean leader will change his opinion in the eleventh hour.

这取决于最后时刻朝鲜领导人是否会改变他的看法。

(不可换用连词 if. )

- 20) There is some doubt as to whether the document is genuine.

关于这份文件的真假是有些疑问的。

(不可以 if 替换。)

- 21) Whether from joy, sorrow, or simply admiration,

I could not say. (Cynthia Voigt: Callender Papers)

是因为高兴,伤心,还是仅仅出于钦佩,我说不清楚。

(如例 16,位于句首的 whether 从句是本句的宾语。)

- 22) I wonder whether we shall be in time for the last

bus or we shall have to stay here until tomorrow morning.

我不知道我们能否赶上最后一班汽车,还是要呆在这里直到明天早晨。

23) “You stand right where you are,” the boy ordered, “till I can figure out if you're lying or not.”

“你就站在原地不动,直到我弄明白你是否在撒谎。”男孩命令道。

**【注意】**

- A. 尽管 if 也能像 whether 那样引导宾语从句,但 if 却不能像例 16 中的 whether 那样紧接 or not,也不能像例 18 至例 20 那样用作介词宾语。If 从句不能像例 17 和例 21 那样提到句首,也不能像例 21 那样超出“是否”两种简单的选择。Whether 后可直接加动词不定式构成不定式短语,如 whether to tell her the truth or not,但 if 没有这种功能。此外,如前所述,在引导主语从句方面,if 受到了极大的限制,因不能紧接名词,if 也不能引导同位语从句。但在两者均可的情况下,特别是口语中,人们多采用只有一个音节的 if。
- B. 有些动词后的宾语从句常以 who, what, where, why 等以 wh-开头的词引导,这样的动词有:decide, describe, discover, discuss, explain, forget, guess, imagine, know, learn, realize(意识到), remember, see, suggest, teach, tell, think, understand, wonder(想要知道)。

- a. I wonder who has left his mobile phone in my bedroom.

我不知道谁将他的手机掉到我的寝室了。

- b. He looks familiar ,but I forget when and where I met him.

他看上去挺面熟 ,但我不记得何时何地见过他。

- C. 有些动词后须先接名词或代词宾语 ,再接动词不定式。如 :  
advise ,ask ,beg ,command ,forbid ,instruct ,invite ,  
teach ,tell ,warn.

- c. Many parents want to forbid their children to play computer games ,but in vain.

许多父母想禁止他们的孩子玩电脑游戏 ,但都没有成功。

- d. They have invited us to join their house-warming party.

他们已邀请我们参加庆祝乔迁的聚会。

- 5 像主语从句一样 ,宾语从句也可以借助 it 而后置。在带有宾语补足语的情况下 ,宾语从句的后置显得尤为重要。

- 24)The spokesman has made it clear that the Government would never negotiate with any terrorist organization.

发言人明确表示 政府决不会与任何恐怖主义组织谈判。

(It 为形式宾语 ,真正的宾语是由连词 that 引导的宾语从句。)

- 25)We take it for granted (that )all men have the right

to pursue their happiness.

我们认为所有的人理所当然地都有追求幸福的权利。

26) I regard it as an honor that I am invited to speak at the graduation ceremony.

我应邀在毕业典礼上发言 感到十分荣耀。

27) I think it very important that we should keep calm.

我认为我们要保持镇静这一点是极为重要的。

6 原则上,凡是引导宾语从句的 that 都可以省略。但实际上是否省略还要看使用的场合以及引导从句的动词。根据 Fowler *Modern English Usage* 按照其后 that 从句的使用情况可将动词作如下分类:

A. 其后 that 常省略的动词: believe, presume, suppose, think.

B. 其后 that 可省可不省的动词: be told, confess, consider, declare, grant, hear, know, perceive, propose, say, see 与 understand.

C. 其后 that 通常不省略的动词: agree, assert, assume, calculate, conceive, hold, learn, maintain, state, suggest, object, reply.

28) I think you are absolutely right.

我想你绝对正确。

(Think 后的 that 从句常省去连词 that.)

29) We suppose he's gone home.

我们猜想他已经回家去了。

(Suppose 后的 that 从句常省略连词 that. )

30) We perceived (that) we were unwelcome and left.

我们察觉到自己不受欢迎后便离开了。

(Perceive 后的 that 从句有时省去 that ,有时不省。在书面语 特别是较为正式的文体中 通常不省。)

31) She calculated that the project would cost more than ten billion dollars.

她估计那个项目要花一百多亿美元。

(Calculate 后的 that 从句一般不省略连词 that. )

32) He replied that he disagreed.

他回答说不同意。

33) The manager objected that it was impossible.

经理对这不可能的看法持反对意见。

**7** 通常引导地点状语从句的 where 在非正式的场合有时也可以引导宾语从句 ,其作用与 that 相当。作为一个纯粹的连词 ,where 在这种用法中已失去了原来的词义。从收集到的例句看 这类 where 从句的前边常有 see read 等动词。

34) I can see where it will be good policy for me to take these parties to Big Butch. (Damon Runyon : The Damon Runyon Omnibus)

我知道带着这一帮又一帮的人去“大步齐”理发店对我来说是上策。

(句中的 where 等于 that. )

35) I see where they found those two aviators after all.

(Dorothy Parker : After Such Pleasures)

我知道他们终究还是找到了那两名飞行员。

36) I read where a plane was lost.

我从报上读到了有架飞机失事的消息。

## 67 That ,Whether 与同位语从句

1 在 fact ,statement 等抽象名词后常接同位语从句以说明它们的具体内容。That 是引导同位语从句的主要连词。Whether 在个别情况下也能引导同位语从句 ,whether 在同位语从句中仍有“是否”的意思。If 虽也有“是否”的意思 ,但不能出现在名词之后 ,因而不能引导同位语从句。

1) Your statement that you found the money in the street will not be believed.

你那在街上捡到这笔钱的说法不会有人相信。

2) Yet , from the beginning , that fact that I was alive was ignored.

然而 ,从一开始 ,我仍活着的事实就被忽视了。

(前一个 that 是指示形容词 ,修饰名词 fact ,而后一个 that 引导同位语从句 I was alive ,说明 that fact 的具体内容。)

3) There was no doubt that he was a liar.

他无疑是一个骗子。

4) I have the impression that he is not quite satisfied with his present job.

我的感觉是他对自己现在的工作不甚满意。



5) Those present came to the conclusion that it was merely a waste of time to go on talking like this.

那些在场的人得出这一结论继续这样谈下去只是浪费时间。

6) There is a rumor that a young couple may be allowed to have two children instead of one in the near future.

有谣言说在不久的将来一对夫妻可能被允许生两个孩子,而不是一个。

7) They have proof that the small country has already had the ability to produce nuclear weapons.

他们有了这个小国已能制造核武器的证据。

8) The report that the ex-president may be sentenced to death has not been confirmed by Iraqi authority.

有关前总统可能被判处死刑的传闻还没有得到伊拉克当局的证实。

**2** 除了抽象名词外,指示代词 this 和人称代词 it 的后边也可以接同位语从句。

9) You must never forget this, that honesty is the best policy.

你永远不要忘记这一点,诚实是上策。

(That 从句是指示代词 this 的同位语。)

10) Rumor has it that she will be the first woman premier in Germany.

谣传她会成为德国的第一位女总理。

(That 从句为 it 的同位语。)

- 11) Plato has it that the soul is immortal.

柏拉图说 ,灵魂是不死的。

- 3 同位语从句有时可能因为主句谓语动词的提前而与先行词分离。

- 12) The order came that all civilians must evacuate New Orleans as soon as possible.

命令来了 ,要求所有市民尽快撤离新奥尔良。

(在 that 引导的同位语从句与先行词 order 间插入了谓语动词 came ,如果将 came 后置 ,先行词与同位语从句虽然接上了 ,但谓语部分太短 ,整个句子会显得头重脚轻。)

- 13) The story goes that there is soon a merger between this state-owned enterprise and a listed company.

据传这家国有企业会很快与一家上市公司合并。

(如例 10 一样 ,先行词 story 与其同位语从句间插入了谓语动词 goes. )

- 14) “There are rumors going around ,” said my father in a broken voice , “that we re going somewhere in Hungary , to work in the brick factories. ” (Elie Wiesel :Night)

“现在有很多传言 ,”父亲嘶哑着嗓门说 ,“我们会去匈牙利的某个地方到砖瓦厂干活。”

(将先行词与同位语从句隔断的不仅有现在分词短语 ,即先行词的逻辑谓语 还有引述短语 said my father in a bro-

ken voice. )

- 4 引导同位语从句的 that 在 feeling ,idea ,impression ,no-  
tion 等表示意念的名词及 fact 一词后有时可以省略 ,而在  
其他名词后一般不省略。

15) I have a feeling ( that ) we are had.

我觉得我们受骗了。

16) I had no idea ( that ) I could meet you here.

我没想到能在这里碰到你。

17) I have a notion ( that ) he ll succeed to pass the exam.

我感觉他会通过这项考试。

- 5 在某些暗含了是与否两种可能的名词后 ,如 doubt ,question  
等 ,可出现以 whether 引导的同位语从句。

18) There is still some doubt whether she could recover  
from such a terrible disease.

对于她能否战胜这样一个可怕的疾病而恢复健康仍然存在  
着某种疑虑。

( 试比较该句与例 3 ,先行词虽然都是 doubt ,但例 3 的  
doubt 前有否定词 no. )

19) The question whether the Prime Minister should  
resign must be decided right now.

总理是否应该辞职这个问题应当马上决定下来。

20) I m in doubt whether I should give his plan my ap-  
proval.

我犹豫不决 不知该不该同意他的计划。

## 68 That ,Whether 与表语从句

1 That 作为连词可引导表语从句 ,that 在从句中不担任任何语法成分 ,也没有任何词汇意义。引导表语从句的 that 有时还可以省略。

1)What he emphasized over and over again was that , no matter how difficult it might be , they should never retreat even for an inch.

他反复强调的是 ,不管有多么困难 ,他们绝对不能后退一英寸。

(由 that 引出的表语从句本身又是一个主从复合句 ,no matter how difficult it might be 为让步状语从句。)

2)My wish is that I may some day travel all over the world.

我的愿望是有一天能游遍世界。

3)His great fear is that he may fail.

他最大的担忧是自己可能失败。

4)The amazing truth is that more than half of all the agricultural goods produced in the world today came from plants originally discovered and cultivated by American Indians. (Lewis Paul Todd and Merle Curti : Rise of the American Nation )

令人惊奇的是 ,今天全世界生产的农产品中 ,一半以上是从当初由美洲印第安人发现或培育的植物中获得的。

5)The fact is ( that )none of them is willing to go there.

问题是他们没有一个人愿意去那儿。

(在从句部分较短 结构也不复杂的情况下 ,引导表语从句的 that 可以省略。当主句部分为 the fact is 或 the reason is 时 ,省略 that 的同时 ,还可以改用逗号。)

Cf :The fact is , none of them is willing to go there.

2) Whether 与 if 都可以引导表语从句。但 whether 后可紧接 or not ,if 却不能。

6)The question is whether he should go on working with SAP or immigrate to Canada immediately.

问题是他应该继续留在 SAP 工作呢还是马上移民加拿大。

7)A useful test is whether the adverbial element can be omitted without altering the meaning of the subordinator.

一个行之有效的检验方法是 ,看副词成分的删除会不会改变那个从属连词的意思。

8)The point is whether or not he should be treated as a hero.

问题是要不要将他作为英雄看待。

9)The mystery is whether Zheng He ever went there at all.

郑和究竟是否去过那里还是个谜。

10)What I'm anxious to know is if the supermarket is open now.

我急于想知道的是这家超市是否现在门还开着。

# Exercises

- Choose one word or phrase from the four choices that best completes the sentence.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the day went on , the weather got worse.
    - With
    - Since
    - While
    - As
  - Tom \_\_\_\_\_ into the house when no one \_\_\_\_\_.
    - slipped ; was looking
    - had slipped ; looked
    - slipped ; had looked
    - was slipping ; looked
  - Mother was worried because little Alice was ill , especially \_\_\_\_\_ Father was away in France.
    - as
    - that
    - during
    - if
  - What was the party like ?  
—Wonderful. Its years \_\_\_\_\_ I enjoyed myself so much.
    - after
    - before
    - when
    - since
  - Can I join your club , Dad ?  
—You can when you \_\_\_\_\_ a bit older.
    - get
    - will get
    - are getting
    - will have got
- I don't really work here. I \_\_\_\_\_ until the new secretary

- arrives.
- a. just help out
  - b. have just helped out
  - c. am just helping out
  - d. will just help out
7. \_\_\_\_ you choose , make sure that it is a good one.
- a. What
  - b. Whichever
  - c. Wherever
  - d. Which
8. I'll go with you as soon as I \_\_\_\_ my work.
- a. will finish
  - b. shall finish
  - c. finish
  - d. finished
9. I didn't manage to work out the problem \_\_\_\_ you had explained how.
- a. until
  - b. unless
  - c. when
  - d. before
10. —When \_\_\_\_ again ?  
—When he \_\_\_\_ , I'll let you know.
- a. he comes ; comes
  - b. will he come ; will come
  - c. he comes ; will come
  - d. will he come ; comes
11. Do you think Sam'll call his old teacher as soon as he \_\_\_\_ in town ?
- a. will be arrived
  - b. is arrived
  - c. arrives
  - d. will arrive
12. \_\_\_\_ he comes , we won't be able to go.
- a. Without
  - b. Unless
  - c. Except
  - d. Even
13. She told us \_\_\_\_ story that we all forgot about the time.
- a. such an interesting
  - b. such interesting a
  - c. so an interesting
  - d. a so interesting

14. The piano in the other shop will be \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a. cheaper ; not as better  
 b. more cheap ; not as better  
 c. cheaper ; not as good  
 d. more cheap ; not as good
15. She doesn't speak \_\_\_\_\_ her friend , but her written work is excellent.  
 a. as well as                      b. so often  
 c. as good as                      d. so much as
16. John plays football \_\_\_\_\_ , if not better than , David.  
 a. as well                      b. as well as  
 c. so well                      d. so well as
17. \_\_\_\_\_ , he doesn't study well.  
 a. As he is clever              b. He is as clever  
 c. Clever as he is              d. As clever he is
18. Jane wore a raincoat \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining.  
 a. so                      b. but  
 c. however                      d. because
19. It was not long \_\_\_\_\_ I forgot it all.  
 a. then                      b. when  
 c. after                      d. before
20. —Listen to me , please.  
 —No. No matter \_\_\_\_\_ you say , I won't give up.  
 a. how                      b. which  
 c. what                      d. whatever
21. —Would you like to join us ?  
 —Sorry , I am not \_\_\_\_\_ as any of you.  
 a. so a good player              b. so good a player  
 c. a player so good              d. a so good player
22. —Does Alan like Hamburgers ?  
 —Yes. So much \_\_\_\_\_ that he eats them almost every day.





- a. more ; much                      b. not ; more  
c. much ; far                          d. a lot ; no
32. Computers can work millions of times \_\_\_\_ abacuses.  
a. much faster than      b. much fast than  
c. so fast as                      d. as fast as
33. His work is better than \_\_\_\_.  
a. anyone                          b. anyone else  
c. anyone else s                  d. anyone s else
34. With the help of the German experts , the factory produced \_\_\_\_ cars in 1992 as the year before.  
a. as twice many                  b. as many as twice  
c. as twice as many              d. twice as many
35. \_\_\_\_ , the soldiers continued their way.  
a. Heavy as was the rain  
b. As the rain was heavy  
c. As heavy was the rain  
d. Heavy as the rain was
36. \_\_\_\_ you have to stay in the hospital , why \_\_\_\_ have a thorough medical examination ?  
a. As ; do you                      b. For ; do you not  
c. Since ; not                      d. Now that ; do not
37. Please come here again \_\_\_\_ you are \_\_\_\_ .  
a. if : having time                  b. when ; freely  
c. if ; freely                          d. when ; free
38. \_\_\_\_ you are , do your duty.  
a. Though                          b. Wherever  
c. Even if                              d. Whenever
39. Please put the only dictionary \_\_\_\_ it was.  
a. that                                  b. which  
c. where                                d. when
40. \_\_\_\_ you marry , make sure he can cook.  
a. Who                                  b. Whom

- c. Whoever                      d. Whichever
41. \_\_\_\_\_ faults he may have ,laziness is not one of them.  
a. What                              b. Whatever  
c. However                         d. No matter
42. Smith kept his business from getting smaller ; \_\_\_\_\_ he could not expand it.  
a. as                                      b. whichever  
c. though                                d. whatever
43. The postman must deliver the mail no matter \_\_\_\_\_ bad the weather is.  
a. what                                  b. how  
c. when                                  d. what
44. \_\_\_\_\_ I am well again ,I can go on with the work.  
a. Now that                            b. In that  
c. Because                              d. What
45. If you think twice \_\_\_\_\_ you speak once , you will speak twice better for it.  
a. after                                  b. when  
c. as                                        d. before
46. \_\_\_\_\_ a baby turtle is hatched , it must be able to take care of itself.  
a. Not sooner than                  b. No sooner  
c. So soon that                        d. As soon as
47. In his time he enjoyed a reputation \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. as great as Mozart , if not greater than  
b. as great as , if not greater than , Mozart  
c. as great , if not greater , as Mozart  
d. greater , if not as great as Mozart
48. The higher the standard of living and the greater the national wealth , the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. greater is the amount of paper is used  
b. greater amount of paper is used

- c. amount of paper is used is greater  
d. greater the amount of paper used.
49. Not only \_\_\_\_ us light , but it gives us heat.  
a. did the sun give      b. the sun gives  
c. gives the sun          d. does the sun give
50. \_\_\_\_ got outside than it began to rain.  
a. Not sooner I had      b. No sooner had I  
c. No sooner I            d. No sooner have I
51. \_\_\_\_ the trouble started.  
a. Hardly I had left than  
b. Hardly had I left when  
c. Scarcely I had left before  
d. Hardly had I left than
52. Was it until you came to China \_\_\_\_ you began to study Chinese ?  
a. where                    b. when  
c. that                      d. then
53. Scarcely \_\_\_\_ asleep when a knock at the door a-waked her.  
a. she had fallen          b. had she fallen  
c. she had fell            d. had she fell
54. London is on the Thames , \_\_\_\_.  
a. but Paris being on the Seine.  
b. and is Paris on the Seine  
c. and Paris on the Seine  
d. and Paris was being , too
55. She had escaped , \_\_\_\_ the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great heat of the fire.  
a. so                        b. or  
c. but                       d. and
56. I was very hungry , \_\_\_\_ I asked for something to eat.  
a. as                        b. for



66. \_\_\_\_ I know , this book will be used as a supplementary material for this course.
- a. As long as                      b. Before  
c. Once                                d. So far as
67. \_\_\_\_ you find either his address or his telephone number , you can t get in touch with him.
- a. Although                        b. Even though  
c. Unless                            d. If
68. Hardly had he reached the school gate \_\_\_\_ the bell rang.
- a. when                              b. while  
c. as                                  d. as soon as
69. You can t go out , \_\_\_\_ you promise to be back before ten.
- a. in order that                    b. even if  
c. as long as                        d. whenever
70. You are always welcome \_\_\_\_ you call on me.
- a. whenever                        b. as soon as  
c. once                                d. as long as
71. All matter , \_\_\_\_ it is solid , liquid or gas , is made up of atoms.
- a. whatever                        b. whenever  
c. no matter what                d. whether
72. I recognized you \_\_\_\_ I saw you at the airport.
- a. while                              b. after  
c. the moment                    d. once
73. \_\_\_\_ you say , I won t agree with you.
- a. No matter how                b. No matter what  
c. No matter which              d. No matter when
74. He was about to go to bed \_\_\_\_ the doorbell rang.
- a. whenever                        b. as  
c. before                              d. when

75. \_\_\_\_ I like economics , I like sociology much better.  
a. As much as                      b. So much  
c. How much                        d. Much as
76. \_\_\_\_ you are leaving tomorrow , we can eat dinner together tonight.  
a. For                                b. Since  
c. Before                            d. While
77. \_\_\_\_ that my head had cleared , my brain was beginning to work much better.  
a. For                                b. Now  
c. Since                              d. Despite
78. I m sure he is up to the job \_\_\_\_ he would give his mind to it.  
a. if only                            b. in case  
c. until                                d. unless
79. We ll visit Europe next year \_\_\_\_ we have enough money.  
a. lest                                b. until  
c. unless                              d. provided
80. \_\_\_\_ he works hard , I don t mind when he finishes the experiment.  
a. As soon as                        b. As well as  
c. As far as                         d. So long as
81. I ve already told you that I m going to buy it \_\_\_\_.  
a. however much it costs  
b. however does it cost much  
c. how much does it cost  
d. no matter how it costs
82. I worked hard every day , \_\_\_\_ , I never work at weekends.  
a. for example                      b. as a result  
c. therefore                         d. however

83. \_\_\_\_\_, he does get annoyed with him sometimes.  
a. Although much he liked her  
b. Much although he liked her  
c. As he liked her much  
d. Much as he liked her
84. \_\_\_\_\_ the calculation is right, scientists can never be sure that they have included all variables and modeled them accurately.  
a. Even if  
b. As far as  
c. If only  
d. So long as
85. \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, the couple were developing an obvious and genuine affection for each other.  
a. But for  
b. For all  
c. Above all  
d. Except for
86. I was advised to arrange for insurance \_\_\_\_\_ I needed medical treatment.  
a. nevertheless  
b. although  
c. in case  
d. so that
87. The mad man was put in the soft-padded cell \_\_\_\_\_ he injure himself.  
a. because  
b. as  
c. lest  
d. seeing as
88. Although he knew little about the large amount of work done in the field, he succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ other more well-informed experimenters failed.  
a. which  
b. that  
c. what  
d. where
89. I have kept the portrait \_\_\_\_\_ I can see it every day, as it always reminds me of my university days in Nanjing.  
a. which  
b. where  
c. whether  
d. when







105. The second-hand car Patrick bought was almost new ; \_\_\_\_\_ , it was in excellent condition.  
a. nevertheless            b. however  
c. but                        d. besides
106. I'd get it for you \_\_\_\_\_ I could remember who last borrowed it.  
a. except that            b. if only  
c. on condition that    d. considering whether
107. The fuzzy , overstuffed quality of nineteenth-century prose resulted from using ten words \_\_\_\_\_ one would have sufficed.  
a. where                    b. which  
c. that                      d. what
108. Larry helped me finish my work \_\_\_\_\_ was very kind of him.  
a. and that                b. so that  
c. and this                d. which
109. \_\_\_\_\_ , work songs often exhibit the song culture of a people in a fundamental form.  
a. They occur where they are  
b. Occurring  
c. Where they occur  
d. Where do they occur
110. Your usual teacher has lost her voice and \_\_\_\_\_ I am taking his place today.  
a. nevertheless            b. however  
c. moreover                d. accordingly
111. I'm telling you this \_\_\_\_\_ you should make a mistake.  
a. so that                 b. though  
c. until                     d. lest
112. They are not willing \_\_\_\_\_ this picture hung in the

corridor.

- a. as we have                      b. as we to have  
c. as us to have                    d. as have we
113. Most substances contract when they freeze so that the density of a substance s solid is \_\_\_\_ of its liquid.  
a. than the higher density  
b. higher than the density  
c. the density is higher than that  
d. the higher the density
114. \_\_\_\_ at temperatures above 1 250 \_\_\_\_ , clay fuses and becomes nonporous stoneware or porcelain.  
a. When fired                      b. It is fired  
c. Firing                              d. When firing at
115. The Smithsonian Institution preserves more than sixty-five million items of scientific , historical , or artistic interest , \_\_\_\_ winning the popular title “ attic of the nation. ”  
a. however                          b. thus  
c. and                                  d. moreover
116. Human behavior is mostly a product of learning , \_\_\_\_ the behavior of an animal depends mainly on instinct.  
a. whereas                          b. so  
c. unless                              d. that
117. He told me only part of the story \_\_\_\_ .  
a. so that was it                  b. so that was this  
c. and that was so                d. and that was that
118. If the idea was wrong , the project is bound to fail , \_\_\_\_ good all the other ideas might be.  
a. whatever                        b. whatsoever  
c. however                         d. though
119. The students were made to repeat the teacher s words





- c. Each time ; once    d. The moment ; as
135. \_\_\_\_ we have a puncture she just sits in the car  
\_\_\_\_ I change the tyre.  
a. Each time , while    b. Once , since  
c. The moment , till    d. While , until
136. He put colons \_\_\_\_ he should have put semicolons.  
a. though                      b. even if  
c. whenever                    d. wherever
137. Great \_\_\_\_ the pitfalls are , we must do our best to  
succeed.  
a. although                    b. while  
c. as                              d. however
138. The team did as well as the opponents after the first  
quarter , \_\_\_\_ they couldn t win.  
a. while                        b. as  
c. even though                d. be it ever so
139. The postman must deliver the mail no matter \_\_\_\_  
bad the weather is.  
a. what                         b. how  
c. when                         d. where
140. She is going to be a doctor no matter \_\_\_\_ difficulties  
she may meet.  
a. who                         b. which  
c. how                         d. what
141. \_\_\_\_ I don t want to make a fuss , I feel I must pro-  
test at your interference.  
a. However                    b. As  
c. While                        d. Whehter
142. It has the same result , \_\_\_\_ way you do it.  
a. as                             b. what  
c. however                    d. whichever
143. In the accident Tom was \_\_\_\_ dead than alive.





- c. the more , the less  
d. the less , the more
151. \_\_\_\_ he could not persuade the other members of the committee , he gave in.  
a. To see that                      b. That  
c. Seeing that                      d. While
152. \_\_\_\_ I m well again , I can go on with the expedition.  
a. Now that                      b. In that  
c. Because                      d. That
153. He probably knew more \_\_\_\_ man of his age.  
a. than other                      b. as any  
c. than any other                      d. as any other
154. If you think twice \_\_\_\_ you speak once , you will speak twice better for it.  
a. after                      b. when  
c. as                      d. before
155. Lincoln , as President , appointed men to high government positions whom he considered most capable , \_\_\_\_ some of them openly scorned him.  
a. even though                      b. if  
c. how                      d. whenever
156. The final exam will cover all \_\_\_\_ taught this term.  
a. what has been                      b. that has been  
c. that was                      d. which has been
157. It s \_\_\_\_ he ll be able to come.  
a. doubtful whether                      b. doubt whether  
c. doubt if                      d. doubtful that
158. \_\_\_\_ faults he may have , meanness is not one of them.  
a. What                      b. Whatever  
c. However                      d. No matter



155. a 156. b 157. a 15.8b 15.9c 160. a

II. Fill in each blank in the following sentences with a suitable conjunction.

1. He was rather tired , \_\_\_\_ he kept on working.
2. I have nothing of the artist about me \_\_\_\_ in faculty \_\_\_\_ in character.
3. Do \_\_\_\_ your parents told you.
4. We held a meeting \_\_\_\_ we might have a thorough discussion about it.
5. It s \_\_\_\_ Adam s mobile phone \_\_\_\_ mine ; it must be Mike s.
6. Tall \_\_\_\_ he was , he could not reach the flower.
7. It doesn t matter \_\_\_\_ you stay or leave.
8. It rained a lot , \_\_\_\_ I didn t have to water the plants.
9. They are hurrying \_\_\_\_ they may not miss the train.
10. Coming back from the countryside , he has become stronger , \_\_\_\_ physically \_\_\_\_ spiritually.
11. \_\_\_\_ everything is clear to you , I have nothing more to explain.
12. \_\_\_\_ this problem is solved , all other problems can be properly solved.
13. It was \_\_\_\_ he was ill that he didn t attend the meeting.
14. He drives \_\_\_\_ he were drunk.
15. He had overslept , \_\_\_\_ he was late for work.
16. They climbed to the top of the mountain \_\_\_\_ they could have a bird s eye view of the city.
17. \_\_\_\_ it rains , we won t be able to go there on foot.
18. The good news arrived \_\_\_\_ they were weeding in the garden.
19. \_\_\_\_ you have made up your mind , you should act.

20. I will read and write \_\_\_\_ I live.
21. \_\_\_\_ he may say , no one will believe him.
22. She was very angry , \_\_\_\_ she went out of the room without saying a word.
23. Hardly had I left \_\_\_\_ the quarrel started.
24. No sooner had we sat down \_\_\_\_ we found it was time to go.
25. I was cooking the dinner \_\_\_\_ I broke a glass.
26. The machine differs from the other one \_\_\_\_ it is more powerful.
27. The book was still \_\_\_\_ I had put it the day before.
28. Make haste \_\_\_\_ you will be late.
29. I shall come \_\_\_\_ I have some urgent work to do.
30. \_\_\_\_ you are right , what follows ?

## **Key**

1. but ( though , yet , nevertheless )
2. neither ; nor
3. as
4. so that ( in order that )
5. neither nor
6. as ( though )
7. whether
8. so ( that )
9. in order that
10. both and
11. Since ( Now that )
12. Once ( As long as )
13. because
14. as if

15. so (therefore)
16. so that (in order that)
17. If
18. while
19. Since (Once)
20. as long as
21. Whatever (No matter what)
22. that
23. when (before)
24. than
25. when
26. in that
27. where
28. or
29. unless
30. Supposing

III. Combine each set of simple sentences into one compound sentence.

1. He is slow. He is sure.
2. I was annoyed. I kept quiet.
3. He failed. He persevered.
4. I shall not oppose your design. I cannot approve of it.
5. He was all right. He was fatigued.
6. Make haste. You will be late.
7. Come in. Go out.
8. He was obstinate. He was punished.
9. I cannot see. It is very dark.
10. It is raining heavily. I will take an umbrella with me.
11. Henry is ill. He cannot study. He still attends school.
12. He saw the boy in the street. He stopped to speak to

- him. He gave him a dollar.
13. Football is a vigorous and healthy game. Every boy should play it.
  14. He is foolish. He is also obstinate.
  15. You may play hockey. You may play football. You must do one of the two.

### **Key**

1. He is slow but he is sure.
  2. I was annoyed , still ( 或 yet )I kept quiet.
  3. He failed , nevertheless he persevered.
  4. I shall not oppose your design ; I cannot , however , approve of it.
  5. He was all right ; only he was fatigued.
  6. Make haste , or you will be late.
  7. Come in or go out. ( 或 Either come in or go out. )
  8. He was obstinate ; therefore he was punished.
  9. I cannot see , for it is very dark.
  10. It is raining heavily , so I will take an umbrella with me.
  11. Henry is ill and cannot study , yet he still attends school.
  12. He saw the boy in the street and stopped to speak to him , and then he gave him a dollar.
  13. Football is a vigorous and healthy game , so every boy should play it.
  14. He is obstinate as well as foolish.
  15. You must play either hockey or football.
- IV. Correct mistakes , if any , in the following sentences.

1. Henry is as old , if not older than , Paul.
2. His income is less than his wife.
3. Peter s car is faster than any car in the race.
4. He studies harder than anyone in his class.
5. Today it is much easier to be healthy than it is in the past.
6. People in industrial countries can expect to live for twice so long as people who lived a few hundred years ago.
7. Even it snows tomorrow , we won t cancel the match.
8. A child as he was , he was able to help his parents do a lot of things.
9. How clever you are , you can t avoid making mistakes.
10. You can t catch up with me , fast as you run.
11. I picked up some German words as I was having a holiday in Berlin.
12. I was reading a novel while someone knocked at the door.
13. A model worker as he is , he remains modest.
14. You must put things that you can find them.
15. I will make friends with no matter who shares my interest.
16. He is willing to help no matter who is in trouble.
17. As everyone is here , let s begin our discussion.
18. You should put the book at where it was.
19. If you can pass the exam depends on how hard you work.
20. As she is young , she knows a lot.
21. Do like I told you.
22. You don t like him is none of my business.
23. I am happy as you have passed the exam.
24. The girl talks as if she has been to the moon.

25. The man smokes as much as his father ten years ago.
26. When time went on his theory proved to be right.
27. Child although he is he knows a lot.
28. I am ready to accept your proposal while it is practical.
29. Mary has done very well , as soon as she has only one year experience of teaching.
30. Tom is going to have trouble till his father knows what he has done.

### **Key**

1. Henry is as old as , if not older than , Paul.
2. His income is less than that of his wife s.  
His income is less than his wife s.
3. Peter s car is faster than any other car in the race.
4. He studies harder than anyone else in the his class.
5. Today it is much easier to be healthy than it was in the past.
6. People in industrial countries can expect to live for twice as long as people who lived a few hundred years ago.
7. Even if it snows tomorrow , we won t cancel the match.
8. Child as he was , he was able to help his parents do a lot of things.
9. No matter how clever you are , you can t avoid making mistakes.  
Clever as you are , you can t avoid making mistakes.  
However clever you are , you can t avoid making mistakes.
10. Fast as you run , you can t catch up with me.
11. I picked up some German words while I was having a holiday in Berlin.



12. I was reading a novel when someone knocked at the door.
13. Model worker as he is , he remains modest.
14. You must put things where you can find them.
15. I will make friends with whoever shares my interest.
16. He is willing to help whoever is in trouble.
17. Since everyone is here , let s begin our discussion.
18. You should put the book where it was.
19. Whether you can pass the exam depends on how hard you work.
20. Though she is young , she knows a lot.
21. Do as I told you. (like 不正规)
22. That you don t like him is none of my business.
23. I am happy that you have passed the exam.
24. The girl talks as if she had been to the moon.
25. The man smokes as much as his father did ten years ago.
26. As time went on his theory proved to be right.
27. Child though he is he knows a lot.
28. I am ready to accept your proposal now that it is practical.
29. Mary has done very well , considering that she has only one year s experience of teaching.
30. Tom is going to have trouble now that his father knows what he has done.

# Index

## A

according as 1 , 31  
accordingly 1 , 24  
after 1 , 2 , 4 , 35 , 42  
although 1 , 2 , 50 , 55  
and 1 , 3 , 8 , 9 , 11 , 12 , 14 , 20  
and that 14  
and yet 16  
any time 41  
as 1 , 2 , 3 , 5 , 26 , 34 , 50 , 57 , 60  
as... as 1 , 61  
as far as 1 , 31 , 36  
as if 1 , 59 , 60  
as it were 59  
as long as 1 , 4 , 46  
as... so 57  
as soon as 1 , 3 , 4 , 39  
as though 1 , 59 , 60  
assume 1 , 47 ,  
assuming (that) 1 , 47 , 54  
as well as 1 , 14

## B

because 1 , 3 , 25  
before 1 , 2 , 4 , 35 , 42  
both... and 1 , 14 ,

but 1 , 2 , 3 , 15

but still 17

but (that) 64

but yet 16

### **C**

consequently 1 , 2 , 24

considering that 1 , 27

### **D**

directly 1 , 2 , 37

### **E**

each time 41

either... or 1 , 22

even if 1 , 2 , 3 , 51 , 55

even though 1 , 51

ever since 35

every time 41

everywhere 56

except (that) 1 , 64

excepting that 1 , 64

### **F**

first time 41

for 1 , 2 , 25

for all (that) 1 , 54

for fear(that) 1 , 33

### **G**

given that 1 , 48

granted (that) 1 , 48 , 54

granting (that) 1 , 48 , 54

### **H**

hardly... when 1 , 40

hence 1 , 23

how 1 , 58

however 2 ,17 ,55 ,58

## I

if 1 ,4 ,43 ,53 ,65 ,66

if an inch 45

if a day 45

if and only if 44

if and when 43

if any 45

if anything 45

if anywhere 45

if a pound 45

iff 44

if I may say so 45

if necessary 45

if not 49 ,

if. . . not 49

if only 1 ,2 ,44

if you please 45

immediately 1 ,2 ,37

inasmuch as 1 ,29

in case (that) 1 ,4 ,33 ,46

in order that 1 ,3 ,4 ,32

insofar as 1 ,31

in so far as 1 ,31

Insomuch as 1 ,29

in spite of the fact that 54

instantly 1 ,2 ,37

in that 29

in the event that 46

## J

just as 57

## L

last time 41

lest 1 ,33

like 1 ,2 ,58 ,59

## **N**

neither... nor 1 ,22

nevertheless 1 ,2 ,17

no matter how 52 ,55

no matter what 52 ,55

no matter when 4 ,52 ,55

no matter where 52 ,56

no matter whether 52 ,55

no matter which 52 ,55

no matter who 4 ,52 ,55

no sooner... than 1 ,40

not... but 15

not only... but also 1 ,14

not so... as 62

not that... but that 28

notwithstanding (that) 1 ,2 ,54

now (that) 1 ,28

## **O**

once 1 ,2 ,39 ,42

on condition that 46

only 1 ,17

only if 1 ,2 ,44

only that 1 ,2 ,29

or 1 ,9 ,19 ,20

or anything 21

or else 20

or no 20

or not 20

or so 21

or somebody 21  
or something 21  
or somewhere 21  
or rather 19  
otherwise 1 ,20

## **P**

provided 1 ,47  
providing 1 ,47

## **R**

regardless of the fact that 54

## **S**

save that 1 ,64  
scarcely. . . before 1 ,40  
seeing as 1 ,27  
seeing that 1 ,27  
since 1 ,2 ,26 ,35 ,42  
so 1 ,3 ,23  
so far as 1 ,31  
so long as 1 ,46 ,  
so much so that 30 ,  
so that 4 ,9 ,30 ,32  
so. . . that 1 ,30  
still 1 ,17  
such that 1 ,30  
such. . . that 1 ,30  
suppose 1 ,47  
supposing that 1 ,4 ,47 ,54

## **T**

than 1 ,2 ,4 ,61  
that 1 ,3 ,5 ,28 ,32 ,50 ,65 ,66 ,67 ,68  
the instant 38  
the minute 38

the moment 38  
the more... the less 63  
the more... the more 63  
therefore 2 ,24  
the next time 41  
the way 58  
the whole time 41  
though 1 ,2 ,3 ,50 ,55  
thus 1 ,23  
till 1 ,3 ,4 ,36  
to such a degree that 31  
to such an extent that 31

## **U**

unless 1 ,49  
until 1 ,2 ,36 ,42

## **W**

whatever 4 ,52 ,55  
whatsoever 52  
when 1 ,3 ,4 ,5 ,18 ,34 ,42 ,43 ,53  
whenever 1 ,34 ,42  
where 1 ,18 ,56 ,66  
whereas 1 ,18  
wherever 1 ,4 ,55  
whether 1 ,3 ,4 ,53 ,55 ,65 ,66 ,67 ,68  
whether... or 1 ,55  
while 1 ,3 ,18 ,34 ,42 ,53  
whilst 34 ,42  
whoever 1 ,52  
with the exception that 64

## **Y**

yet 1 ,16

# Bibliography

- Alexander , L. G. Longman English Grammar. New York :  
Longman Inc. ,1988
- Barter , Alice K. Tools : A Guide to Basic Grammar and Writing. Dubuque : Kendall/ Hunt Publishing Company ,1987
- Herbert , A. J. The Structure of Technical English. London :  
Longman Group Ltd. ,1965
- Palmer , Frank. Grammar. New York : Penguin Books Ltd. ,  
1971
- Quirk , Randaolph et al. A Grammar of Contemporary English.  
London : Longman Group Ltd. 1972
- Quirk , Randaolph and Gabriele Swan. English in Use. Essex :  
Longman Group UK Ltd. ,1990
- Swan , Michael. Practical English Usage. Oxford : Oxford University Press ,1980
- Tregidgo , P. S. Practical English Usage. London : Longman  
Group Ltd. ,1976
- 王逢鑫. 英语模糊语法. 北京 : 外文出版社 2002
- 卢仲遹、朱盛教. 八大词类说 历史与现状. 江汉大学学报 2005(3)



- 田雨山,刘养之.英语省略句.北京:商务印书馆,1981
- 张道真.实用英语语法(最新版).外语教学与研究出版社,2002
- 冯翠华.英语修辞大全.北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1995
- 任学良.汉英比较语法.北京:中国社会科学出版社,1981
- 刘辰诞.教学篇章语言学.上海:上海外语教育出版社,1999
- 刘国善.英语句法新编.北京:对外贸易教育出版社,1992
- 吴传瑞.谈谈现代英语新变化.桂林:广西人民出版社,1981
- 林语堂.开明英文法.北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1982
- 林相周.英汉翻译中的语法问题.福建:福建人民出版社,1979
- 依拉德斯.现代英语句法问题集.上海:上海译文出版社,1982
- 侯维瑞.英国英语与美国英语.上海:外语教育出版社,1992
- 徐立吾.当代英语实用语法.长沙:湖南人民出版社,1980
- 钱歌川.英文疑难详解续篇.北京:中国对外翻译出版社,1981
- 章振邦.新编英语语法教程(第三版).上海:上海外语教育出版社,2000
- 赖余.常用英语谚语.南昌:江西人民出版社,1982